This item was submitted to Loughborough's Research Repository by the author.
Items in Figshare are protected by copyright, with all rights reserved, unless otherwise indicated.

## High resolution solutions for the multipath problem in radar

PLEASE CITE THE PUBLISHED VERSION

PUBLISHER
© Ali Taha

LICENCE

CC BY-NC-ND 4.0

REPOSITORY RECORD

Taha, Ali. 2019. "High Resolution Solutions for the Multipath Problem in Radar". figshare.
https://hdl.handle.net/2134/12424.

## This item was submitted to Loughborough University as a PhD thesis by the author and is made available in the Institutional Repository (https://dspace.Iboro.ac.uk/) under the following Creative Commons Licence conditions.

## (c) creative

C O M M O N S D E E D

Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivs 2.5

You are free:

- to copy, distribute, display, and perform the work

Under the following conditions:

BY Attribution. You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor


Noncommercial. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.

No Derivative Works. You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work

- For any reuse or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work.
- Any of these conditions can be waived if you get permission from the copyright holder

Your fair use and other rights are in no way affected by the above.

This is a human-readable summary of the Leqal Code (the full license).
Disclaimer $\left.{ }^{[ }\right]$

For the full text of this licence, please go to:
http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/



# "HIGH RESOLUTION SOLUTIONS FOR THE MULTIPATH PROBLEM IN RADAR" 

 byali taha, bsc., Msc.

A DOCTORAL THESIS

Submitted in Partial Fulfilment of the Requirements for the Award of Degree of Doctor of Philosophy of the Loughborough University of Technology

1987

```
Supervisor: J.E. Hudson
Department of Electronic and Electrical Engineering Loughborough University of Technology, U.K.
```

Mor 88

TO MY PARENTS

WエF゙E

AND CHILDREN


## Abetract


#### Abstract

The problem of tracking radar tapgets in the low-angle region where conventional monopulse radars face difficulties due to the presence of multipath waves is considered in this thesis. The emphasis of the presentation is mainly directed towards finding a new simple closed-form solution to the coherent multipath problem over a smooth surface. Another concern is to improve the performance of the three-subepertures maximum-likelihood estinator when the two received signels are in-phase or anti-phase at the centre of the array.


The multipath phenomenon and its modeliing for smooth and rough surfaces are discussed and simulation results obtalned for different surfaces, subsequently the following are treated:

First, a new four-subaperturea technique to improve the in-phase and anti-phase performance of the maximum likelinood estimator above ia derived and simulation results are shown. Then, an improved version of this technique is introduced as a part of the new algorithm.

Second, a new three-subapertures trigonometric solution to solve the coherent multipath problem is derived and demonstrated by simulation results. This new method is simpler than the maximum likelihood estimator above and very similar in its estimation accuracy.

Third, the performance of the maximum entropy method ia tested for the conerent multipath problem by using the
three-subapertures arrangement of a linear array. Finally
the performances of the above three methods and the normal
phase monopulse radar are tested and compared for different
surfaces when the conerent and noncoherent multipath exist
together. Simulation results show that the performances of
the maximum entropy method and phase monopulae are much
better than the others when the target is low-flying over a
rough surface.

## III

## AKKNOWIEDGEMENT

The author is deeply indebted to his suppervisor, Dr. J.E. Hudson, for his continuous support and encouragement. without which this work could not have been completed.

```
    The author also wighes to thank the people and the Government of the Syrian Arab Republic for the generous financial support.
The patience of my wife Ibtisam and my duaghter Jamila will never be forgotten.
```


## LISTOFSYMMOIS



| $r_{1}$ | the slant range between the receiving antenna and the reflection point on the surface. |
| :---: | :---: |
| $r_{2}$ | the slant range between the target and the |
|  | reflection point on the surface. |
| $a, b$ | the radil of curvature |
| 3SA-MLE | three-subapertures maximum likelihood estimator |
| 4SA-MLE | four-subapertures maximum likelinood technique |
| 3SA-TRM | three-subapertures trigonometric solution method |
| 4SA-TRM | four-subapertures trigonometric solution technique |
| 384SA-TRM | mutual 384 subaperture trigonometric solution tech. |
| 3SA-MEM | three-subapertures maximum entropy method |
| $\Phi^{h, v}$ | the phase associated with the reflection coefficient |
|  | (norizontal and vertical polarization) . |
| $\mathrm{h}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$ | radar height |
| $\mathrm{n}_{t}$ | target neight |
| n | surface height difference |
| $\delta_{0}$ | the approximate path difference between the direct |
|  | and indirect ways at the receiving point. |
| $\Psi$ | the phase difference between the two signals |
|  | at the array ${ }^{\text {s }}$ centre. |
| $\Psi_{1}$ | the phase associated with the direct signal |
|  | at the array's centre. |
| $\Psi_{2}$ | the phase associated with the reflected signal |
|  | at the array's centre. |
| $\Psi_{\text {to }}$ | the phase of the direct signal at ref. point |
| $\Psi_{r o}$ | the phase of the reflected signal at ref. point |
| $\Psi_{t 1}$ | the phase of the direct signal at point 1 |
| $\Psi_{\mathbf{r l}}$ | the phase of the reflected signal at point 1 |
| $\Delta \Psi$ | the change in $\Psi$ |



## vil

| $\theta_{B}$ | the bisecting angle of the two sources |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\theta_{\text {D }}$ | the angular distance from the bisector angle |
| $\mathrm{x}_{0}$ | specular reflection point |
| $\mathrm{X}_{1}$ | projection of $r_{1}$ on the ground |
| $\mathrm{x}_{2}$ | projection of $r_{2}$ on the ground |
| ds | diffused power contributing area |
| $Y$ | the $y$ axis value of the gilstening surface boundry |
| $\mathrm{x}_{\mathbf{a}}$ | the $x$ axis start point of the integration |
| $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{b}}$ | the $x$ axis end point of the integration |
| Fd | roughness factor |
| $\mathrm{Fd}_{1}, \mathrm{Fd}_{2}$ | roughness factor at local grazing angle $\gamma_{1}$ and $\gamma_{2}$ |
|  | respectively. |
| $\rho_{81}$ | specular reflection associated with $\gamma_{1}$ over rough |
|  | gurface. |
| $\mathrm{P}_{82}$ | specular refiection associated with $Y_{2}$ over rough |
|  | surface. |
| $\Delta \mathbf{x}$ | Integration step length on the $x$ axis |
| $\Delta p_{\text {di }}$ | patch value of the diffused power from a surface |
| $a_{1}, a_{2}$ | complex amplitudes of the direct signal and 1 ts |
|  | coherent multipath. |
| $\mathrm{a}_{1 \times 1} \mathrm{a}_{1 J}$ | the real and imaginary parts of $a_{1}$ |
| $\mathrm{a}_{2 r} \mathrm{a}_{2 J}$ | the real and imaginary parts of $a_{2}$ |
| $\mathrm{G}_{1}, \mathrm{G}_{2}$ | subaperture gains in the direction of the target |
|  | and its image. |
| $s_{\text {m }}$ | the output of the m-th subaperture |
| m, K, M, i, J | Integers |
| K | the relative strength of the two received signals |
| $w_{k, 1}$ | the coeffecients represent the phase progresgion |
|  | along the array for each ancle of arrival. |


| $C M, m$ | the m-th parameter of the all-pole filter |
| :--- | :--- |
| $P_{M}$ | the output power of the all-pole filter |
| $S / N \quad$ | signal-to-noise ratio calculatedfor the direct |
|  | gignal only as received by the main beam of the |
|  | array. |

## Contente

## cnapter -

Page
Introduction
1-1 The tracking problem of a low-flying target ..... 1
1-2 Classical solutions of the multipath problem ..... 3
1-2.1 Screening ..... 5
1-2.2 Polarization ..... 5
1-2.3 Time of arrival ..... 5
1-2.4 Doppler frequency ..... 5
1-2.5 Off-axis tracker ..... 6
1-2.6 Double null tracker ..... 6
1-2.7 Frequency diversity ..... 6
1-2.8 The complex indicated angle ..... 6
1-3 Modern high resolution algorithms ..... 7
1-3.1 The ilnear prediction methods ..... 8
1-3.2 Capon-type algorithms ..... 9
1-3.3 Projection-type algorithms ..... 10
1-3.4 Parametric target model fitting ..... 11
1-4 Thesis outline and contributions ..... 13

## chepter -2

Pace
Surface Reflection - a survey
2-1 Introduction ..... 16
2-2 Reflection from a smooth surface ..... 18
2-3 Divergence factor ..... 25
2-4 Fresnel zone ..... 27
2-5 The Rayleigh oriterion ..... 29
2-6 Multipath interference ..... 32
2-7 Rough surface ..... 34
2-7.1 Diffuse reflection model for
low-flying target ..... 37
2-7.2 The slopes ..... 47
2-7.3 The elevation angle ..... 47
2-8 Depolarization ..... 47
Appendix A2 ..... 49
Chapter -
The Maximum Likelihood Estimator
3-1 Introduction ..... 56
3-2 The maximum likelihood formulation for two
target and three subapertures ..... 58
3-2.1 The symmetric case solution ..... 67
3-2.2 The nonsymmetric case solution ..... 68
3-3 The four subapertures technique ..... 70
Page
3-3.1 The phase shift formulation ..... 77
3-4 Simulation results and discussion ..... 81
3-4.1 The symmetric case solution ..... 83
3-4.2 The nonsymmetric case solution ..... 97
Appendix A3 ..... 109
Appendix B3 ..... 111
chamtex - 4
The Trigonometric High Resolution Method
4-1 Introduction ..... 114
4-2 Trigonometric solution formulation ..... 115
4-2.1 The symmetric case solution ..... 119
4-2.2 The nonsymmetric case solution ..... 128
4-2.3 The phase difference status indicator ..... 121
4-2.4 The four-subapertures techniques ..... 122
4-3 Simulation results and discussion ..... 128
4-3.1 The symmetric case solution ..... 129
4-3.2 The nonsymmetric case solution ..... 143
Chapter-5
The Maximum Entropy Method and Monopulse Radar
5-1 Introduction ..... 159
5-2 The maximum entropy formulation ..... 161
Page
5-2.1 Burg method ..... 162
5-3 The phase-comparison monopulse ..... 165
5-4 Simulation results and discussion ..... 171
5-4.1 The MEM results ..... 171
5-4.2 The phase monopulse resulte ..... 178
Chamters -
Effect of Surface Roughness on Elevation
Angle Estimation in Multipath
6-1 Introduction ..... 182
6-2 The composite multipath signal model ..... 183
6-3 Simulation results and discussion ..... 185
6-3.1 The maximum likelihood method ..... 187
6-3.2 The trigonometric solution method ..... 193
6-3.3 The phase-comparison monopulse ..... 203
6-3.4 The maximum entropy method ..... 207

Conclusions and Recommendations for Further Work
7-1 Conclusions ..... 217
7-2 Recommendations for further work ..... 219
Appendix G ..... 221
References ..... 234

## Intmoduetyon


#### Abstract

This thesis addresses the tracking problem of a low-fiying target over different types of surfaces. The main effort is directed toward finding a new simple method to eatimate the angle of arrival of the target in the presence Of a strons specular multipath component. Additionaliy, the associated problem with in-phase and anti-phase gignals 1s investigated.

In this chapter we will introduce the reader to the low-ilying tareet tracking problem, review the previous regearch, and give an outline of the thesis with a summaxy of the contributions.


## 1-1 The tracking problem of a low-flying target

The classical form of tracking radar is related to a system which follows the path of a single target and meagures 1ts position in a given coordinate syatem. Usualiy, the aame aygtem provides information about the speed of the target which can be used to estimate its euture position.

Various single tarset tracking methods have been developed and used in the past few decades. These methods are mainly based on either simultaneous or sequential lobing


#### Abstract

techniques which requime a minimum number of echo pulses to extract the required error signals to drive the servo-control system toward the tarcet's position. These methods are very sensitive to fluctuations in the amplitude of the received signal (pulse to pulse amplitude pluctuations). Thus, a new system which depends on the bagis of one pulse to extract the required error signals was found. This monopulse system 18 basicaliy of two types, an amplitude-comparison monopulse and phase-comparison monopulse (studied in chapter 6). Detailed analyaig of this aystem can be found in many reference books [1-1.2.3]. It 1s shown that the monopulse system provide an optimum tracking performance as long as just one target is presented within the main lobe of the antenna's pattern. The problem arises when two (or morel sicnels caused by closely spaced targets (or by a low-fiying target with multipath) fall within the main-beam pattern where the tracking system starts to behave erraticaliy in the vertical plane and frequently loses track. One obvious solution to this problem Is to increase the resolving power of the antenna by increazing the frequency or the dimengions of the radar antenna. This solution is not always possible practically because of physical and environment limitations.

The main reason for the erratic performance of the tracking radar in following the path of a low-flying target can be related to the following three factors [1-4]: a- specular multipath reflection component b- diffuse multipath reflection component c- energy or clutter reflected on the sea surface from the same rance cell as the target.


The contribution of each term above depends on the state of the sea (or the under-lying surface in general) as will be shown next chapter. Figure 1-1 shows the behaviour of a tracking radar in following a low-flying target with constant amplitude and decreasing elevation angle. It can be seen from the first zone (zone A) that when the elevation angle is high and the beam 18 well above the surface, the tracking accuracy is the optimum obtainable from the system (as, when one target eximts). For a smaller elevation angle, where some reflected energy starts to enter through the side lobes, the antenna shows weak oscillation around a mean value (Zone B). After that the oscillation increases rapidiy due to the Increase in the strength of the reflected signal (mainiy specular multipath) making the radar lose track altogether. Figure 1-2 shows the equilibrium positions for a curved earth with a specular reflection coeffecient less than one. It can be seen that the equilibrium positions about the true target are continuous while it breaks up into series of loops about the image. When the reflection coefficient is one (over a amooth, flat surface) then the radar will track the target or 1ts image by fumping from one to the other occasionally. Many classical solutions have been suggested to solve this problem as will be shown in the next gection.

## 1-2 Classic solutions of the multipath problem

[^0]

Figure 1-1: Behaviour of a tracking radar, tracking an airborne target, which is opening at constant altitude, shows erratic response as target dropsi"in elevation [1-4].


Figure 1-2: Equilibrium $p$ sitions for a curved earth and $\rho_{s}<1$ with a target opening at constant altitude $[1-4]$.
or aperture's length mentioned above. Here, a brief description is made of each solution and its vuinerability to multipath.

1-2.1 Screening: This can be done by placing a fence in front of and below the antenna to intercept the reflection from the surface. It is found that the multipath problem is replaced by adffraction problem from the top edge of the fence due to illumination by the main beam [1-5].

1-2.2 Polarization: By using vertical polarization the reflected signals in the vicinity of the Brewster angle can be reduced, but this is not applicable for low elevation angles. While the use of circular polarization in reducing rain clutter is widely recognized, it has no real advantages in reducing the surface reflection because it does not reverse its sense for angles less than Brewster angle [1-4]. [1-6].

1-2.3 Time of arrival: Theoreticaly, a time lag due to the difference in the propagation paths of the direct and reflected signals can be used to separate them. This time lag is very small in practice (especially for very low elevation angle) which makes it impossible to separate the two signsls [1-4].

1-2.4 Doppler frequency: Sometimes the two signals differ in frequency. This difference is very small in practice, and sometimes does not exist. However, to resolve the direct from the reflected signals on the basis of frequency would require exceptional oppler resolution [1-4].

From the above four solutions it is concluded that separation of the direct aignal from its specular multipath by simple filtering is not possible.

1-2.5 off-axis tracker: In this case the beam is tilted upward from horizontal by about 0.7 op beamwidth, then the reflected signal from the target image under the surface is attenuated by being appreciably closer to the first null of the beam and further off boresight than the signal from the true target. This method reduces the elevation angle error to acceptable accuracy [1-7].

1-2.6 Double null tracker: This tracker is based on generating an antenna pattern which forces the difference function beam to have two symmetrically located nulls about the horizon. The second nuil (the extra null) is always maintained in the direction of the image target [1-12].

1-2.7 Frequency diversity: This method is usually used to reduce the glint of a target. But, as can be seen from figure 1-1, the angle errors due to specular multipath at low elevation angle are cyclical. This is due to constructive and destructive interference between the two received signals. In changing the operating frequency the phase relationship between these two signals will change accordingly and thus, the angle errors can be averaged by operating the tracking radar over a wide band of frequencies. The main disadvantage of this method is the need for a large bandwidth [1-4].

1-2.8 The complex indicated angle: The normal monopulse uses only the in-phase (or anti-phase) component of the difference signal, but in the presence of multipath additional quadrature components do exist along with the in-phase component. A complex angle error-signal can be derived from
these two components, and a spiral can be drawn in the complex plane with the elevation angle acting as a parameter [1-8.9]. One of the main disadvantaces of this method is the ambiguity problem due to the overlapping turns of the spiral. As the antenna height increases (in terms of wavelengths). the number of the turns increases creating more ambiguities. Also. this method is sensitive to surface roughness and the improvement obtained over a rough surface is very marginal [1-10.11].

These are some of the well-known classical solutions to this problem. However, due to the growing adaptive array antenna technology, new high-resolution algorithms are proposed and some of these algorithms will be reviewed in the coming section.

## 1-3 Modern high-resolution algorithmB

During the last few years a great number of high resolution algorithms for multiple target direction finding has appeared in the literature. Theae algorithms arise from different fields of application such as radar. sonar, seismology, and radio astronomy. The common factor among them is the use of a spatially distributed array of sensors which samples the wavefield in the propagation medium. Nickel [1-13] classified these algorithms into four categories (linear prediction methods, Capon-type algorithms. Projection-type algorithms, and parametric target model fitting), and analysed their possible use in phased array


#### Abstract

radar to improve the spectral or angular resolution. The firet three categonies can also be listed under a more seneral term called the spectral estimation techniques. An exceliant review of the application of these techniques in the frequency domain 1s ahown by Kay and Marple [1-14], and a sood survey of the array signal processing applications can be found in many reference books ilke Hudson $[1-15]$. clarke [1-16], Haykin [1-17]. Childers [1-18], Monzingo [1-19]. and a paper by Gabriel [1-26].


1-3.1 The linear prediction methods:

The most populas methodin this category is the maximum entropy method (or the autoregressive model fitting) where the spatialiy sampled data, from the equaliy spaced IInear arxay. is asaumed to be stationary. Burgis method is one of the different ways to calculate the filter coefficient (or the reduced form of the covariancematrix) in order to get the angular power spectrum. The use of this method in radar, as a wey to solve the multipath problem associated with a low-flying target. was firgt reported by Evans [1-21] where he shows a result from a field test which demonstrates that the method works well. but he did not mention the scale of the surface poughness. However this method has many problems such as line splitting, high sidelobes, and begt Pilter length determination [1-14]. In general. fully conerent multipath (or conerent sources) with fixed phase and apiltude relations can not be resolved, as will be seen in chapter 6.

## 1-3.2 Capon-type alporithmB

Theae methods take the following general form:
$P(\theta)=\left(S^{*}(\theta) Q^{-V} S(\theta)\right)^{-V} . \quad, V$ real

Where, $*$ represents the complex conjugate transpose, $Q$ is the array covariance matrix. $P(\theta)$ is the estimated power in the angular direction $\theta$. and $S(\theta)$ the corresponding steering vector. When $v=1$, the above equation represents the maximum likelihood method of Capon [1-13]. Griffiths [1-22] sives a sood summary of the covariance matrix properties, and Mather [1-23] shows simulation results for different methods. Gabriel [1-24] discussed the use of spectral estimation techniques for radar target tracking and detection in the presence of interfering sources. He found that the maximum ilkelihood method and the sidelobe canceller failed to resolve two partially correleted ( $95 \%$ ) sources with half-beamwidth angular spacing and 10 dB signal-to-noise ratio. Evans [1-25] and White [1-26] show the performance of the maximum likelihood method in locating a low-piying target over a smooth surface where specular multipath dominates. They found that this method fails completely over all values of phase difference between the two received gignals. while the maximum-entropy method succeeds when the two signals are in phase quadrature. Thus, the method cannot be used to solve fully coherent targets in general. Besides, a minimum number of snapshots (twice the number of array elements) are always
required in order to set satisfactory resolution [1-13]. Thus, the successful use of these types of algorithms in a monopulse-based tracking system is highly unlikely or impossible in practice.

## 1-3.3 Profection-type algorithms

The general scan pattern of these methods is given [1-13] by:

$$
\frac{1}{\mathrm{p}}(\theta)=1 /\left[\mathrm{s}^{*}(\theta) \mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{~S}(\theta)\right]
$$

where, $\frac{\mathcal{P}}{\mathcal{P}}(\theta)$ is the estimated power in the angular direction $\theta$. the noise space $p^{L} I-X X^{*}$, and the matrix $X$ formed by a set of orthogonal vectors ( $x^{1} \ldots \ldots x^{M}$ ) describes the signal space, where $M$ represents the number of targets. If the columns of $X$ represent the eigenvectors corresponding to the largest eigenvalues of the estimated covariance matrix, then the multiple signal classification method (Music) would result. This method was first found and analysed by Schmidt [1-27]. It is cabable of producing an estimate which contains extremely narrow peaks at signal directions, especially for small number of data vector, i.e in the order of the array elements. Gabriel [1-24] shows that this method could resolve partially correlated signals $(95 \%)$ with sharp peaks, when the maximum likelihood method failed. However for the case of fully correlated signals such as the specular multipath problem, this method fails too [1-13].

In general, one concludes that the resolution of two


#### Abstract

conerent sources or equivalent radar targets is more difficult for any of the above three categories of gpectral estimation technique, because the two coherent sources produce nonstationary fields in the space domain. However. Gabriel [1-28] shows that a solution is poseible whenever sufficient relative motion or "Doppler cycles" are available.

The single snapshot case (monopulse) 18 the most difficult one to solve satisfactorily, because 1t is a constant-phase coherent case even if the two sources are not nominaliy coherent. A solution is sometimes posaible by using a smali movine subaperture alone the single sinapsot data sample. This synthetic movement of the subaperture is very similar to the action which occurs in Burg's technique of the maximum entropy method $[1-28]$.


1-3.4 Parametric tareet model fitting

In principle, these are the only methods which can resolve the fuliy conerent multipath problem or equivalent closely spaced tariets on the basis of one snapshot. Even so they have attracted littie attention in the ilterature. The unknown parameters of the recelved field. guch as angular directions, amplitudes, and phases are basicaliy determined by selecting the model which offers the best eit for the collected data. For padar applications, the most convenient model is the point target approach with constant amplitude and phase. The optimization procedure involves the minimization of the mean-gquared error between the collected



#### Abstract

The concept of an all digital proceseing radar eystem 1s deacribed by Gabriel [1-24]. A conventional receiver 1s used prior to the digitizing stage for each element of the receiving array then the baseband $1 n-p h a s e$ and quadrature video outputs are applied to sample and hold circuits followed by analogue to digital converterg. The snapghota are taken according to Nyquist sampling rate corresponding the bandwidth of the bageband video.


1-4 Thesis outilne and contributions

Chepter 2 is devoted to a brief gurvey of the multipath problem for a low-fiying target over smooth and rough surfaces respectively. Simuletion results for diffused power distributions for a siven radar-tareet seometry and different surface roughnesges and slopes are shown.

Chapter 3 1s focused on the study of the closed-form maximum - $11 k e l i h o o d$ estimator where a ilnear array op three subapertures is used. A new phase estimation. four subapertures technique to improve the in-phase and anti-phase (Just anti-phase for the symmetric case) erroneous performance is derived and simulation resulta are shown. Also, an amplitude comparison four subaperturep technique to solve the anti-phase problem for the symmetric case is discussed. This technique depends on the fact that the amplitude of the composite output at the array centre 18 minimum whenever the two received signals are in phase opposition and vice versa.

Chapter 4 demonstrates a new closed-form method to solve the specular multipath problem in which a simple trigonometric solution is derived and simulation results are shown and compared with their correspondents for the maximum likelihood estimstor discussed in chapter 3 (the same array is used). Also, a new method to detect the occurrence of In-phase and anti-phase conditions of the two coherent sources 18 shown and new three and four subapertures techniges are introduced with extensive simulation results.

Chapter 5 briefly discusses the performances of the maximum entropy method for spectral estimation (Burg's method) and phase-comparison monopulse radar over a amooth surface.

Chapter 6 is devoted to a study of the performances of the above-mentiond methods in tracking a low-plying target over a rough surface. Simulation results show the effects of the surface roughness parameter, surface slopes, and the array beamwidth. The effects of the off-axis angle on the performance of the phase monopulse radar is shown too.

Chapter 7 includes discussion and recommendations for further work.

[^1]1- A new closed-form high resolution method to solve
the specular multipath problem associated with a
low-flying target over a smooth surface is found.

2- New four-subapertures techniques to improve the performances of the maximum-ilkelinood and the trigonometric methods when the two received signals from the target and its image are in-phase or anti-phase are derived and validated.

3- The performances of the closed-form maximum likelihood estimator, the trigonometric method, the maximum entropy method. and the phase-comparison monopulse radar are studied and compared for a low-fiying target over a rough surface. The effects of surface roughness, surface slopes, and array beamwidth are shown.

Chapter 2


### 2.1 Introduction:

The elevation angle estimation of a low-flying target depends on the amplitude and spatial distribution of the target energy (the reflected power from the flluminated target) forward scattered from the surface between the radar and the target. In particular, the reflection properties of a surface are frequency dependent, so that for long wavelengths, the surface is considered as being perfectly smooth: and for short wav lengths, it is considered to be rough. When the surface is smooth the specular reflection target energy is approximated simply by the target-image model. which obeys the laws of geometrical optics [2-2]. [2-10]. In practice, however, most of the surfaces in nature are irregular for microwave frequencies, producing another component (diffuse scattering) which reaches the radar from an extended area lying between the target and the radar "glistening surface" [2-2], [2-5]. Many factors would affect the reflection from a rough surface other than frequency [2-4]. like elevation angle, polarization, gurface curvature.
wind speed and direction, water vapour...........etc.
Extensive descriptions of multipath phenomena are siven In several standard texts [2-1.5]. Many papers are found to address this problem over the sea, but few results are available for over-land operation. Katzin $[2-7,8]$ developed a theory in which the elemental scatterers are taken to be the small patches or "facets" of the sea surface which overile the main large-scale wave pattern. At low srazing angles the destructive interference between direct and specular reflected waves sives rise to the so-called "critical angle" and spiky apearances of the sea scattererg. Mratik and Smith [2-14] gave particular attention to the effects of target motion which permit rejection of multipath components falling outside the radar tracker's passband. Twersky $\{2-15]$ studied the reflection from a rough surface, showing that when the grazing angle approaches zero the refiection coefficients approaches unity. Court [2-1ø] used the optical analogy to gtudy the radar-coverage in elevation over the sea surpace. Beard and Katz [2-12] used a vector presentation of the total received field over a calm ocean. By interpreting practical data according to this model, it has been possible to relate the surface roughness to the sea state. Katz [2-6] extended the vector model to include circular polarization. Barton [2-9]. [2-13] developed a theory for low-angle tracking over the aurface depending on the rough surface scattering theory. A detalled model of the diffuse scattering is produced, which takes care of surface roughness, spikiness. masking, seometrical


#### Abstract

correction $f$ actor.........etc. and which agree with experimental data 1 n [2-17].

The refraction of electromagnetic waves at low angles of elevation is known to be troubleaome, especially at or near the horizon where an error in meaguring the elevation angle is introduced [2-18]. This phenomenon is not of Interest in this study and a homoseneous atmosphere 18 congidered (for more detail about refraction and deffraction. see references [2-3]. [2-18]).

In this chapter, it is intended to sive a brief gurvey of the multipath problem for a low-flying target over the sea surface, to be used in later chapterg to evaluate various aleorithm's performances.


## 2. 2 Reflection from a smooth surface:

Specular reflection takes olace only over a smooth. plane surface, where the laws of seometrical optics are valid. The reflection coefficient is normaliy defined ag the ratio of the reflected wave amplitude to the incident wave amplitude and the classical formulas for it are the following $[2-1]$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{0}{ }^{h}=\frac{\sin (\gamma)-\sqrt{\varepsilon c-\cos ^{2}(\gamma)}}{\sin (\gamma)+\sqrt{\varepsilon c-\cos ^{2}(\gamma)}} \tag{2-1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Ro}^{V}=\frac{\varepsilon c \sin (\gamma)-\sqrt{\varepsilon c-\cos ^{2}(\gamma)}}{\varepsilon c \sin (\gamma)+\sqrt{\varepsilon c-\cos ^{2}(\gamma)}} \tag{2-2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Where, Roh and $\mathrm{RO}^{\mathrm{V}}$ are the reflection coefficients for the horizontal and vertical linear polarizations reapectively: $r$ 1s the grazing angle of incident and $\varepsilon C$ is the complex dielectric constant of the medium given by [2-1]. [2-3].

$$
\begin{align*}
& \varepsilon c=\varepsilon_{1}-j \varepsilon_{2}  \tag{2-3}\\
& \varepsilon_{2}=60 \lambda \sigma \tag{2-4}
\end{align*}
$$

where, $\lambda$ is the wave length of the incident wave; $\sigma$ is the conductivity of the medium in $S / m ; \quad \varepsilon_{1}=\varepsilon / \varepsilon_{0}$ is the relative dielectric constant of the medium $\left(\varepsilon_{0}\right.$ is the free space dielectric constant). Pigure 2-1. shows the geometry of the reflection from a smooth surface.

In the above paragraph the polarization is referred to as being horizontal when the electric field vector of the Incident wave is horizontal (parallel to the plane of incidence $\because . .$. field vector is lying in the vertical plane containing the incident and reflected rays.

The value of $\varepsilon c$ depends on the electrical properties of the medium, which depends on too many factors to be discused in this regearch (for more information, see ref.[2-3]). In practice Ec 18 much larger than unity, which allows us to introduce an approximation to equations (2-1) and (2-2) above Which become as follows:


Figure 2-1: Geometry of flat earth reflection

$$
\begin{align*}
& \operatorname{Ro}^{h}=\frac{\sin (\gamma)-\sqrt{\varepsilon c}}{\sin (\gamma)+\sqrt{\varepsilon c}}  \tag{2-5}\\
& \operatorname{Ro}^{V}=\frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon c \sin (\gamma)-1}}{\sqrt{\varepsilon c \sin (\gamma)+1}} \tag{2-6}
\end{align*}
$$

Figures 2-2 and 2-3. show the reflection coefficients for both ground and sea as a function of the grazing angle of the incident wave [2-3]. In figure 2-2 different types of ground (according to soli-water mixture) are shown at a frequency of 8 GHZ , and in figure $2-3$ the reflection from the sea surface for prequencies of $100 \mathrm{MHZ}, 1 \mathrm{GHZ}$ and 3 gHz . When the grazing angle is zero the values of $\mathrm{Ro}^{h}$ and Rover are equal to -1. The amplitude of $\mathrm{Ro}^{\text {h }}$ then decreases gradualily with increase of the grazing angle from $0^{\circ}$ to $90^{\circ}$ with its phase staying constant $\left(\phi=180^{\circ}\right)$. The value of Rov is more complicated, where the ampiltude value of Rov decreases rapidiy with increasing value of $\gamma$ till it reaches a minimum when $\gamma=\sin ^{-1}(1 / \varepsilon c)$ as shown from (2-6). This grazing angle is called the pseudo-Brewster angle and its value depends on the electrical properties of the surface and it is more pronounced in the case of ground than for sea. When the
grazing angle increases beyond the Brewster angle the amplitude of Rov increases again till its value becomes equal to $R o^{h}$ at $\gamma=99^{\circ}$. The phase of RoV changes from $180^{\circ}$ at small grazing angles to zero for large grazing angles with the changeover occuring around the Brewster angle. For agrazing angle in the neighbourhood of one degree, both Ron and Rov moduli are nearly one and their phases lags are nearly $180^{\circ}$.


Figure 2-2: The reflection coefficient as a function of grazing angle for four soil-water mixtures at a frequency of $8 \mathrm{iHz}[2-3]$.


Figure 2-3: The reflection coeffecient as a function of grazing angle for sea water. Curves are shown for frequencies of $100 \mathrm{MHz}, 1 \mathrm{GHz}$, and 8 GHz . Fron $[2-3]$


#### Abstract

A circulariy polarized wave consists of the aum of a horizontal and vertical component, equal in amplitudes (if not, an elifptically polarized wave occurs), and out op phase by 90 degrees. The reflection of this wave over a smooth surface can be easily calculated from equations (2-1) and (2-2), and given in [2-6] by:


$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Rcs}=\frac{1}{2}\left[R O^{V^{2}}+R O^{h^{2}}+2 R O^{V} \operatorname{RO}^{n} \cos \left(\Phi^{n}-\Phi^{V}\right)^{1 / 2}\right. \tag{2-7}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi c=\sin ^{-1}\left\{\frac{\operatorname{Ro}^{V}}{2 \operatorname{Rcs}}\left[\sin \left(\Phi^{V}\right)+\frac{\operatorname{Ro}^{n}}{\operatorname{Ro}^{V}} \sin \left(\Phi^{n}\right)\right]\right\} \tag{2-8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Where Res and Tc are the reflection coefficient and the phase for circular polarization. when the receiving antenna 18 circularly polarized in the same sense as the transmitting source. The reflection coefficient for opposite sense circular polarization 1s given [2-6] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Rco}=\frac{1}{2}\left[R O^{2}+\operatorname{Ro}^{n^{2}}-2 R O^{V} R O^{n} \cos \left(\Phi^{n}-\Phi^{V} V^{1 / 2}\right]\right. \tag{2-9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure $2-4$ shows the reflection coefficient for circular polarization from a smooth surface as a function of the grazing angle for C-band. Ron and Rov are drawn as a dashed line for comparison only.

It is clear from the curves that for low-altitude targets, the character of the received signal will depend strongly on the sense of the receiving antenna polarization circularity with respect to the transmitted one.

The discussion of the specular reflection from a smooth


Figure 2-4: Reflection coefficient for circular polarization [2-6].

```
surface in this section can be used to represent actual
surface reflectivities in at least the following areas [2-3]:
a: Flat desert surfaces
b: Flat surface covered by snow
c: Sea or lakes surfaces with negligable wave heights
```


### 2.3 The divergence factor

The reflection coefficients in (2-1) and (2-2) are valid only in the case when the smooth surface is plane. In practice they can be used for short range paths, between a target and a radar. If the reflection is occuring from a curved earth (see fig. 2-5), a new factor, the so called divergence factor (D) must be introduced, and the reflection coefficients for both linear polarizations becoms $R^{h \cdot V}=$ Ro ${ }^{h, V} D$. Accepting that the target and antenna heights are very small in comparison with the earth's radius and that the total multipath length 18 approximately equal to the ground range $G$, the divergence factor is given by [2-2] as follow:

$$
D=\left[1+\frac{2 r_{1} r_{2}}{a\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right) \sin (r)}\right]^{-1 / 2}\left[1+\frac{2 r_{1} r_{2}}{b\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right)}\right]^{-1 / 2}(2-1 \theta)
$$

In practice, the earth is considered to be spherical with ( $a=b$ ) and if the grazing angle is very small. then $D$ may be given by:


Figure 2-5: Geometry of long-range specular multipath

$$
\begin{equation*}
D=\left[1+\frac{2 r_{1} r_{2}}{a\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right) \sin (\gamma)}\right]^{-1 / 2} \tag{2-11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ are the slant ranges of the receiving antenna and the target from the point of reflection on the aurface respectively, $a$ and $b$ are the radil of curvature of the intersections of the surface of the earth and two vertical planes perpendicular to the direction of propagation.

### 2.4 Fresnel zone:

Due to the phase relationships among the refiected field vectors from a smooth illuminated surface between the transmitter (target) and receiver (radar), most of the indirect or reflected energy will cancel, except that from a comparatively small elliptical patch of the surface which combines with the direct field energy at the receiving point. This elliptical reflection area is called the Fresnel zone. The dimensions of these zones and their locations are very important in the radar siting problem. A simplified calculation of the zones are siven in $[2-1,2]$ by:

The centre of the ellipses

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Xon}=\frac{G}{2} \frac{1+\frac{2 n_{r}\left(n_{t}+n_{r}\right)}{n \lambda G}}{1+\frac{\left(n_{t}+n_{r}\right)^{2}}{n \lambda G}} \tag{2-12}
\end{equation*}
$$

The semimajor axis


The semiminor axis

assuming that $h_{r}, h_{t}$ and $\delta_{0}$ are all much smaller than $G_{i} h_{t}$ and $h_{r}$ are the heights of the target and the radar respectively, $G$ is the ground range, $\delta_{0}$ is the approximate path difference between the direct and indirect waves at the receiving point given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{0}=\frac{2 \mathrm{~h}_{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}}{\mathrm{G}} \tag{2-15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the $n$ _th ellipse is determined by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta_{n}=\delta_{0}+\frac{n \lambda}{2} \tag{2-16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (2-16) shows that the successive zones are in phase opposition, so the energy from adjacent zones tends to cancel but, becauge the excitation amplitude decreases from
zone to zone. not completely. This explains the argument behind considering the first Fresnel zone as the main contributer to the reflected energy at the receiving point.

2. 5 The Rayleigh Criterion:

In practice a surface may be smooth for some wavelengths and rough for others, or for a given wavelength it may be either smooth or rough for different values of the grazing angle. Thus, the first step in studying the surface scattering is to determine the type of the surface depending on the two given parameters. Rayleigh suggested a simple formula, which depends on measuring the phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) between two parallel rays encountered on a surface with height difference $(h)$ at grazing angle $\gamma[2-2]$.

$$
\Psi=\frac{4 \pi h}{\lambda} \sin (\gamma)
$$

If $\Psi=\theta^{\circ}$ (or very amall), the two reflected rays will be in-phase and the surface 1s smooth. If $\Psi=180^{\circ}$. the two reflected rays will be in phase opposition and cancel out in this direction. But, according to the law of "energy conservation" they can not be lost and must be scattered in other directions and the surface is rough. By taking the middle value of the phase difference $\left(\Psi=90^{\circ}\right)$ between these two extremes, and substituting it in (2-17), the smooth surface condition "Rayleigh Criterion" can be given by:

```
    n<\frac{\lambda}{8\operatorname{sin}(r)}
    rc}=\mp@subsup{\operatorname{sin}}{}{-1}(\frac{\lambda}{8n}
    The right-hand part of equation (2-19). shows that
there are two ways to make the surface appears to be smooth,
(a): by making the value }h/\lambda\mathrm{ very small ( }h/\lambda->0\mathrm{ ), (b): by
taking a very small grazing angle ( }\gamma->0\mathrm{ ).
    Obviously, most of the real surfaces in nature are
neither smooth nor rough. Various theoretical and
experimantal investigations show the field scattered by a
rough surface to be the sum of specular and diffuse
components. Table 2-1, shows the critical angle rc, above
Which the surface appears rough at different wave length, and
sea states. When ris greater than twice ro, the specular
component from the surface becomes negligable and the main
source of scattering is the diffuse one [2-5]. When the
grazing angle is less than the critical angle, the specular
reflection coefficient will be the dominant term.
```

Table 2-1
Meximum angles for specular reflection at different radar frequencies and sea state [from, 2-5].

| Sea State | Descrip- | Wave | Rms Helght | Critical Angle, (deg) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Number | sea | (m) |  | $\lambda=0.7 \mathrm{~m}$ | $\lambda=0.1 \mathrm{~m}$ | $\lambda=0.03 \mathrm{~m}$ |
| 1 | Smooth | 0-0.3 | 0-0.865 | $>45$ | $>6$ | >1. 8 |
| 2 | Slight | 0. 3-1 | 9.865-6.21 | 12-45 | 1.8-6 | 0.5-1.8 |
| 3 | Moderate | 1-1.5 | 0.21-6.32 | 8-12 | 1.2-1.8 | 0.3-6. 5 |
| 4 | Rough | 1.5-2.5 | 0.32-6.54 | 5-8 | 6. 7-1.2 | 0.2-0.3 |
| 5 | Very rough | 2. 5-4 | 0. 54-0.86 | 3-5 | 0.4-0.7 | 0.12-0.2 |
| 6 | High | 4-6 | $0.86-1.3$ | 2-3 | 6. 3-6.4 | 0.89-8.12 |
| 7 |  | $>6$ | >1.3 | $<2$ | <0. 3 | $<0.04$ |

## 2-6 Multipath interference

The radar antenna receives the reflected wave and the direct wave simultaneousiy. When the reflection takes place over a smooth, plane surface, and assuming a homogeneous atmosphere, the treatment is simple. From figure 2-1. the amplitude of the total field at the radar antenna ig siven [2-2]. [2-17] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=E_{0} \sqrt{\left(1+\mid R^{n}, V_{1}\right)^{2} 4 \mid R^{n}, V_{i} \cos ^{2}(0.5 \Psi)} \tag{2-20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where. $\Psi$ 1s the total phase shift between the two waves civen by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi=2 \pi \frac{6}{\lambda}+\Phi \tag{2-21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Where, $\Phi$ is the phase associated with the reflection coefficient, and 6 1s the path lencth diffference between the direct wave and the reflected wave which can be calculated Prom Pigure 2-1 as follow:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \delta=2 h_{r} \sin (\gamma) \\
& \text { (2-22) } \\
& \sin (Y)=\frac{n_{r}+n_{t}}{G} \quad \text { for small } \gamma \\
& \sigma=\frac{2 n_{p}\left(n_{r}+n_{t}\right)}{G}=\frac{2 n_{p} n_{t}}{G}  \tag{2-24}\\
& \text { Assuminctin equation (2-24). } n_{p} \ll h_{t} \text {. EO is the direct field }
\end{align*}
$$

strensth, $R^{n, V}$ is the amplitude of the reflection coefficient of the surface. From equation (2-20) $E$ can take any value between a maximum and a minimum according to the value of $\Psi$ (when the radar is gtationed in the same position, $\Psi$ will be a function of the target position). Assuming $\Phi=\pi$, for horizontally or verticaliy polarized wavea at amall grazing angle (lesi than the Brewster angle), the minimum value op $E$ wil1 occur when:

$$
\frac{2 n_{t} n_{r}}{\lambda G}=k \quad, k \text { is an integer }
$$

$$
(2-25)
$$

and the maximum value at


Thus the presence of a specular multipath over a smooth. plane surface causes the continuous elevation coverage of the beam to break up into a lobed structure [2-10], [2-18].

## 2-7 Rough surfaces:

Various experimental and theoretical investigations of the rough surface have proved that the scattered field (wave) can be represented by the sum of two components, a specular component and a diffuse component[2-2], [2-4], [2-9], [2-12], [2-13]. The correaponding reflection coefficients are designated $R s$ and $R d$ respectively. The characteristics of the specular reflection component $R$ is the same as that from a smooth surface with the following restriction:
a- The amplitude of the reflection coefficient is smaller than that for a smooth surface.
b- The reflection coefficient fluctuates.

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{s}=\rho_{g} D R O \tag{2-27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where: $p_{g}$ is the specular scattering coefficient from a rough surface given [2-5] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{s}^{2}=\exp \left[-\left(\frac{4 \pi \sigma_{h}}{\lambda} \sin (\gamma)\right)^{2}\right] \tag{2-28}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\sigma_{h}$ is the rms deviation of the surface neights.
The fluctuation of $R s$ in ans given model of a rough surface can be considered to be the result of adding together a constant field and a zero mean random field whose real and imaginary parts are normally distributed, with different variances in general(for detail.see [2-2]).

The power from the target which reaches the rough surface and is not reflected epecularly or absorbed. will be
scattered in other directions. Part of this power will reach the radar from an extended region "gligtening surface" from the neighbourhood of the target to the neighbourhood of the radar. This is called the diffuse reflection component. The basic scattering elements are the small facets which overlie the main large-scale wave pattern or swell. The rms slope of the small surface facets is given by $\beta_{0}=2 \sigma_{h} / d_{c}$. where $d_{c}$ is the correlation distance [2-2]. The diffusely scattered power from a rough surface is given [2-2] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Rd}=\rho_{d} D R O \tag{2-29}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\rho_{\mathrm{d}}$ is the rms value of the diffuse scattering coefficient and $D$ is the divergence factor which can be neglected in the case of low-elevation targets becauge of its small effect on diffuse scattering [2-13]. Common practice among engineers is to express Pd as a simple function of ( $\sigma_{h} \sin (\gamma) / \lambda$ ) as shown in figure $2-6$, which was drawn from practical data [2-5]. Since $r$ varies widely over the glistening surface, using figure $2-6$ might lead to an error. Besides Barton $[2-9]$. showed that figure 2-6 is not accurate. and the values of $\rho_{d}$ shown are smaller than the real values. This is because the antenna used in collecting the data was very directive and part of the scattering surface is not accounted for.

For low-flying targets the grazing angle $\gamma$ is small in comparison with the rms surface slopes Bo (for sea and land Bo 1a typically 0.05-0.25 rad.). For guch casea, the theory


Figure 2-6: Scattering factors Vs roughness (from [2-5]).
by Spizzichino [2-2] predicted that the diffused power will be concentrated near the ends of the glistening surface at $A$ and $B$ as shown in figure 2-7-b. A simple diffuse reflection model has sometimes been used. where the total diffuse power 1s divided between a foreground component(fust in:front of the radar antenna at $A$ ) and a horizon component (just inifront of and below the target, at $B$ ). The value of the diffuse and specular component is taken, according to the surface roughness and grazing angle, from figure 2-6. For long range targets the horizon component for this simple diffuse model may lie behind the horizon range with a curved earth. So, this simple model cannot accurately represent the diffuse scattering. In order to get a more accurate model for a lowflying target, and in order to adopt the gligtening surface theory to partially rough surfaces, Barton [2-13] introduced a roughness factor (Fd) which would account for removal of reflected diffuse power by specular reflection at either grazing angle $\gamma_{1}$ or $\gamma_{2}$ as shown in figure 2-7-a.

## 2-7.1 Diffuge reflection model for low-flying target:

In this model, the target is considered to be an active transmitter, with non-directional antenna, illuminating the radar and the surrounding rough surface ( $\rho_{g}=0$ ). The received power from the direct path (Pr) is given [2-13] by:

$$
P r=\frac{P t G t G r \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{2} R^{2}}
$$

and the clutter-reflected power Pc is given by

(a)

(b)

Figure 2-7: (a) The diffuse reflection from a glistening surface, (b) The glistening surface (top view).

$$
\begin{equation*}
P C=\int d P C=\frac{P t G t G r \lambda^{2}}{(4 \pi)^{2}} \int \frac{\sigma^{\circ} d B}{r_{1}^{2} r_{2}^{2}} \tag{2-31}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $G t$ and Gr are the sains of the transmitting and receiving antennas and $\sigma^{\circ}$ is the bistatic scattering coefficient from $\gamma_{1}$ and $\gamma_{2}$ The integration in (2-31) is over the area within the resolution cell formed by the receiving beam and the transmitted waveform, also the galns Gt and Gr are considered to be constant over the 3-dB beamwidth. The contribution of the small area of the surface (where $r_{1}, r_{2}, \sigma_{0}^{0}$ and the antenna gain are constant) is civen by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d g_{d}^{2}=\frac{d P c}{P r}=\frac{R^{2}}{\left(r_{1} r_{2}\right)^{2}} \frac{\sigma^{0}}{4 \pi} d s \tag{2-32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Assume that all the diffuse power come from within the giletening surface, with $\sigma^{\circ}=\cot ^{2}\left(B_{0}\right)$. sor $B, \beta_{0}$ and zero when $\beta>\beta_{0}$. Besides, for low-Plying target condition assume $\theta_{t}<B_{0} \ll 1, n r<n t \ll R, r_{1} \approx X_{1} . r_{2} \approx x_{2}$. The coordinate of the glistening surface boundry is then given by the following, from [2-13].

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y= \pm \frac{x_{1} x_{2}}{x_{1}+x_{2}}\left(\frac{n_{r}}{x_{1}}+\frac{n_{t}}{x_{2}}\right) \sqrt{B_{0}^{2}-\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{n_{r}}{x_{1}}-\frac{n_{t}}{x_{2}}\right)^{2}} \tag{2-33}
\end{equation*}
$$

and it extends from $X_{a}=h_{r} / 2 \theta_{0}$ to $X_{b}=R-h_{r} / 2 \beta_{0}$. The total diffuse power is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho^{2}=\frac{1}{4 \pi B_{0}} \int \frac{R^{2} d s}{x_{1}^{2} x_{2}^{2}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi B_{0}^{2}} \int_{x_{a}}^{R_{b}^{2} y d x} \frac{(R-x)^{2} x^{2}}{x^{2}} \tag{2-34}
\end{equation*}
$$

When the target is at low-altitude and long range, for which the glistening surface extends beyond the horizon range, equation (2-34) becomes as follows [2-13].

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho^{2}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \beta_{\dot{o}^{2}}} \int_{x_{a}}^{x_{b}} \frac{y d x}{x^{2}} \tag{2-35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, the following approximation can be made: $\theta_{t}=h_{t} / R$ and $y= \pm \theta_{t} \beta_{0}$.

In equation (2-34) the surface is considered to be completely rough. In general, a fraction of the power incident on the surface will contribute to the diffuse scattering component but most of it for the specular component (especially when the target is very low over the surface). One method of scaling the diffuse term in (2-34) is by multiplying it by a roughness factor fa.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Fd}^{2}=1-\rho_{\delta}^{2}=1-\exp \left[-\left(\frac{4 \pi \sigma_{h} \sin (\gamma)}{\lambda}\right)^{2}\right] \tag{2-36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Barton [2-13], used separate roughness factors $\mathrm{Fd}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Fd}_{2}$ corresponding to. local grazing angles $\gamma_{1}$ and $\gamma_{2}$ associated with each area within the glistening surface.

$$
\begin{equation*}
F d^{2}=F d_{1} \quad F d_{2}=\sqrt{\left(1-\rho^{2} g_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{82}^{2}\right)} \tag{2-37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $P_{g i}$ and $\rho_{g 2}$ are the apecular reflection coefficient for both pathe associated with $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ respectively, see pigure 2-1. $\mathrm{Fd}^{2}$ becomes zero wherever $\rho_{g 1}$ or $\rho_{g 2}$ equal one (amooth surface case). By including the roughness factor ( $\mathrm{Fd}^{2}$ ) in equation (2-34), the diffuse scattering coefficient is given [2-13] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
p^{2}=\frac{R^{2}}{2 \pi \theta^{2} 0} \int_{x_{a}}^{x_{b}} \frac{\mathrm{Fd}^{2} Y d x}{(R-X)^{2} x^{2}} \tag{2-38}
\end{equation*}
$$

This roughness factor accounts for the specular power at low-elevation ansles and the horizon effect for a round earth. Also. no shadowing or masking correction factor is required unless very apecial circumstances exist such as a huge obstacle interupting the path [2-13] .....etc.

In order to meet the law of energy conservation, Barton [2-9] noticed that a geometrical correction factor is needed when $r_{1}<2 \theta_{0}$ to take account of the solid angle of the diffuse peflection being no longer reduced in proportion to $r_{1}$. The effect of the new factor would be to reduce the horizon diffuse power component by one-third to two-thirds for that siven in equation (2-34).

Barton [2-13] considered two typical low-angle tracking cases. The sligtening surface dimensions were calculated from $(2-33)$, and $\Delta \rho_{d i}^{2}$ values were calculated for $\Delta x=500 \mathrm{~m}$ through the recion from the specular reflection point to the horizon. Table 2-2 shows complete descriptions for both cases. The diffuse power distribution over the ground range

Table 2-2: Typical paths for evaluation the diffuse reflection. from [2-13].

|  |  | Case ( A ) | Case (B) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Description of path |  | Short rance | Long range |
|  |  | target | target |
| Range: | R ( km ) | 10 | >>10 |
| Heights: | $n_{t} \quad(m)$ | 105 | >>105 |
|  | $\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{r}} \quad(\mathrm{m})$ | 5 | 5 |
| Elevation: | $\theta_{t}$ (rad) | 0.01 | 0.01 |
| Surface slope: | $日_{0}$ (rad) | 0.1 | 0.1 |
| Ground ranges: | $x_{a}(m)$ | 25 | 25 |
|  | $x_{0}(\mathrm{~km})$ | 0.5 | 0.5 |
|  | $x_{h}$ (km) | 9.3 | 9.3 |
|  | $x_{b}$ (km) | 9.5 | >>10 |

and the effect of the roughness factor for moderate sea ( $\sigma_{h}=5 \lambda$ ) and rough sea ( $\sigma_{h}=20 \lambda$ ) are shown in figures (2-8-a,b), (2-9-a,b) for short range and long range target respectively. From the curves, the foreground component is slightly affected by the roughness factor but the largest horizon components are gradually reduced. Also, by comparing figure (2-8-a,b) with figure (2-9-a,b), the difference between short ranges and long ones in the horizon region, is small in both roughness cases. In both if the foreground component is exciuded. $\rho_{d}$ will lie between 0.1 and 0.2 , and most of this diffused power will originates arround the specular reflection point rather than at horizon.

Figures (2-10-a) and (2-10-b) show the dipfuse power distribution in elevation for both short and long range targets for a completely rough surface and for the two roughness factors mentioned earlier. The diffused power from a region at range $X$ will appear at ancle $\left(-h_{r} / X\right)$ relative to the radar's antenna (for large $h_{r}$ the modification for curved-earth must be considered). The short range case has a relatively big horizon component for rough surface ( $p_{s}=0$ ). Dut the long range case lacks this term. The foreground term for the short rance case is somewhat smaller than that for the long range.

Further gimulation of this target's diffuse reflection model for different surface roughnesses, rms slopes. elevation angle, and radar-target geometry has been carried out. The results are shown in appendix A2, tables 1 to 7 , which will be used in chapter 6 to study the performances of



Figure 2-8: Diffused power distribution over a short ground range
( a ): rough surface $\left(\rho_{s}=0.0\right)$.
( b ): effect of roughness factor for medium and rough surface (after sarton 2-13).

(2)

(b)

Figure 2-9: Diffused power distribution over a long ground range ( a ): rough surface ( $P_{\mathbf{s}}=0.0$ )
( b ): effect of roughness factors for meaium and rough surface (after Barton [2-13]).
(a)


Figure 2-10: Diffused power distribution in elevation for completely rough, medium, and rough surface.
( a ): short range target.
( b) : long range target.

$$
\text { From }[2-13] \text {. }
$$

some high resolution algorithms in the presence of diffuse and specular multipaths.


#### Abstract

2-7.2 The slopes: The rms slope of the facets overlying the large-scale pattern ( $B_{0}$ ) is a very complicated function of the wind speed and direction over the sea. Its reduction would narrow the gilstening surface and move its limits farther from the terminala (A \& B), as can be seen from equation (2-33), but the net increase in the diffuse power is very smali, and vice-verse [2-13].


```
2-7.3 The elevation angle:
```

The elevation angle has a big effect on the burface behaviour as shown in equation (2-19). When the elevation angle of the target decreases, the horizon component of Rd which, to some extent depends on the gilstening surface widths, decreases and the value of Rs increases making the surface look! smoother, and vice versa.

2-8 Depolarization:

[^2]On the basis of theoretical work, Beckmann [2-2] proved that, when the incident wave is purely inearly polarized (verticaliy or horizontally), the reflected wave in the plane of incidence is not depolarized (specular reflection case), and, when the signal is scattered out of the plane of incidence, it is strongly depolarized (diffuse scattering case). Also in [2-4], a description of an experiment over the water surface is given where a pure inear polarization (vertical and horizontal) is tranamitted. The received cross polarized scattered field is shown to be on the order of 25 $d B$ below that of the incident field (no mention of the surface roughness is made). Also, the same experiment showed that the signals arriving from directions other than the specular reflection direction (Diffusely scattered field) were highly depolarized.

## APPENDIX A2

(includes tables 1 to 7)

Table 1: The range distribution of the diffused power for 80 $=0.65, n_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, \quad h_{t}=205 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{R}=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{n}} / \lambda=5$.

| $\begin{aligned} & X_{a} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | X (m) | $\begin{gathered} \Delta p_{d}^{2} \\ \sigma_{h} \Delta \lambda=5 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \mathrm{Fd} \\ & \sigma_{h}^{2} / \lambda=5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -n_{r} / X \\ & \text { (rad.) } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 50 | 250 | 0.41 | 0.3780 | --------- |
| 250 | 758 | 0.137 | 0.8720 | -0.010000 |
| 750 | 1250 | 0. 051 | 0.0146 | -9.005000 |
| 1250 | 1758 | 0.034 | 0.0067 | -6. 603333 |
| 1750 | 2250 | 0.827 | 8.8041 | -0.802500 |
| 2250 | 2750 | 0.024 | 9.8829 | $-0.002808$ |
| 2750 | 3250 | 0.022 | 0.0023 | -8.001666 |
| 3250 | 3750 | 0.022 | 0.0019 | -6.001428 |
| 3750 | 4250 | 0.022 | 0.0817 | -0.861250 |
| 4258 | 4756 | 0.823 | 0.0016 | -0.801111 |
| 4750 | 5250 | 0.024 | 0.0015 | -0.001000 |
| 5250 | 5750 | 0.826 | 0.0015 | -0.000909 |
| 5750 | 6250 | 0.029 | 0.0015 | -0.000833 |
| 6250 | 6750 | 0.033 | 9. 0015 | $-0.000769$ |
| 6750 | 7250 | 0.038 | 0.0016 | -6.000714 |
| 7250 | 7750 | 0.041 | $0.0817^{\circ}$ | -8.080666 |
| 7750 | 8000 | 0.013 | 0.0005 | -8.000634 |

Total horizon component: $\quad \Delta p_{d}^{2}=0.56 . \Delta p_{d}^{2} d^{2}=0.189$
rotal forground component: $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.41 . \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \mathrm{Fd}^{2}=0.37$

Table 2: The range distribution of the diffused power for $\beta_{0}=6.20$. $h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, \quad n_{t}=205 \mathrm{~m}, \quad R=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$.


Total horizon component $: \Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.366 . \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F d^{2}=0.0373$
Total forground component: $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.449, \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F d^{2}=0.400$

Table 3: The range distribution of the diffused power for $\theta_{0}=0.1 . \quad h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, \quad h_{t}=205 \mathrm{~m}, \quad R=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5.20$.

| $\begin{aligned} & X_{a} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & X_{b} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \\ \sigma_{h} / \lambda=5 \end{gathered}$ | $\Delta p_{d}^{2} \mathrm{Fd}^{2}$ |  | $-n_{p} / X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ | $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=20$ | (rad.) |
| 25 | 258 | 0.417 | 0.3700 | 0.4170 |  |
| 250 | 750 | 0.069 | 0.8362 | 0.0691 | -0.010000 |
| 758 | 1250 | 0.025 | 0.9074 | 0.8230 | -0.005000 |
| 1250 | 1750 | 0.017 | 0.8034 | 0.0123 | -0.003333 |
| 1750 | 2250 | 0.814 | 0.0821 | 0.0080 | -0.002500 |
| 2250 | 2750 | 0.012 | 0.0015 | 6. 0658 | $-0.002000$ |
| 2750 | 3250 | 0.611 | 0.0012 | 0.0846 | -0.001666 |
| 3250 | 3750 | 0.011 | 0.8810 | 0.0039 | -0.001428 |
| 3750 | 4256 | 0.011 | 0.0009 | 0.0035 | -0.001250 |
| 4250 | 4750 | 0.012 | 6.8088 | 0.0033 | -0.001111 |
| 4750 | 5250 | 6. 013 | 0.0008 | 0.0632 | $-8.001000$ |
| 5250 | 5758 | 0.814 | 0.0008 | 0.0032 | $-0.080909$ |
| 5750 | 6250 | 0.016 | 0.0008 | 0.8034 | -0.000833 |
| 6250 | 6750 | 6. 019 | 0.8089 | 0.0638 | -0.000769 |
| 6750 | 7250 | 0.824 | 0.0011 | 0.0044 | -6.000714 |
| 7250 | 7750 | 0.032 | 0.0013 | 0.8053 | -8.000666 |
| 7750 | 8250 | 0.044 | 0.0017 | 0.0069 | -0.000634 |
| 8250 | 8750 | 0.061 | 0.8023 | 0.0094 | -0.000625 |
| 8750 | 8975 | 0.028 | 0.0010 | 0.0040 | $-0.000580$ |

Total norizon component $: \Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.433$
Total forground component: $\Delta f_{d}^{2}=0.417$

Table 4: The range diatribution of the diffused power for $\theta_{0}=0.05, \quad h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, h_{t}=105 \mathrm{~m}, \quad \mathrm{R}=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5$.

| $\begin{aligned} & x_{a} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} x_{b} \\ (m) \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \\ \sigma_{h} / \lambda=5 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F d^{2} \\ & \sigma_{h} / \lambda=5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -h_{r} / x \\ & \text { (rad. }) \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 50 | 500 | 0.454 | 0.2350 | --------- |
| 500 | 1000 | 0.045 | 0.0116 | -0.006666 |
| 1000 | 1500 | 0.024 | 9. 8039 | -0.004000 |
| 1500 | 2008 | 0.017 | 0.0021 | -0.002857 |
| 2000 | 2500 | 0.814 | 0.0014 | -0.002222 |
| 2506 | 3000 | 0.013 | 0.0611 | -6. 001818 |
| 3000 | 3500 | 0.012 | 0.0009 | -0.001538 |
| 3508 | 4000 | 0.012 | 0.0008 | -0.001333 |
| 4000 | 4500 | 0.812 | 0.0008 | -0.001176 |
| 4500 | 5000 | 0.813 | 0.0008 | -0.001052 |
| 5000 | 5500 | 0.614 | 0.0008 | -0.000952 |
| 5500 | 6000 | 0.016 | 0.0008 | -0.000869 |
| 6000 | 6500 | 0.818 | 0.0009 | -0.000800 |
| 6500 | 7808 | 0.822 | 0.8010 | -0.000740 |
| 7000 | 7500 | 0.028 | 0.0812 | -0.000689 |
| 7500 | 8000 | 0.038 | 0.0015 | -0.000645 |
| 8000 | 8500 | 0.854 | 0.0020 | -0.000606 |
| 8500 | 9000 | 0.870 | 0.0025 | -0.000570 |

Total horizon component: $\quad \Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.42 . \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F d^{2}=0.034$
Total forground component: $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.45, \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F^{2}=0.235$

Table 5: The pange distribution of the dipfused power for $B_{0}=0.20 . h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, h_{t}=105 \mathrm{~m}, R=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$.

| $x_{a}$ <br> (m) | $x_{b}$ <br> (m) | $\begin{gathered} \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \\ \sigma_{h} / \lambda=5 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \Delta p_{d}^{2} F d^{2} \\ & \sigma_{h} / \lambda=5 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & -\mathrm{h}_{\mathbf{r}} / \mathrm{x} \\ & (\text { rad. }) \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 12.5 | 500 | 0.4778 | 0.2529 |  |
| 500 | 1000 | 0.0115 | 0.0829 | -0.006666 |
| 1000 | 1500 | 0. 0060 | 0.0009 | -0.004000 |
| 1500 | 2000 | 0.0043 | 0.0085 | -6. 082857 |
| 2000 | 2500 | 0.8036 | 0.6004 | -0.092222 |
| 2500 | 3000 | 0.0832 | 0.0003 | -0.001818 |
| 3000 | 3500 | 0. 0031 | 0.0002 | -0.001538 |
| 3500 | 4000 | 0.8030 | 0.0002 | -0.001333 |
| 4000 | 4500 | 0.0032 | 0.0002 | -0.001176 |
| 4500 | 5000 | 0.0033 | 0.0802 | -6.001052 |
| 5000 | 5500 | 0.0036 | 0.0902 | -0.000952 |
| 5500 | 6000 | 0.0841 | 0.0002 | -0.000869 |
| 6000 | 6500 | 0.0848 | 0.0002 | -0.000800 |
| 6500 | 7600 | 0.0060 | 0.0003 | -0.000740 |
| 7800 | 7500 | 0.8677 | 0.0003 | -0.000689 |
| 7500 | 8000 | 0.0108 | 0.0804 | -0.000645 |
| 8000 | 8500 | 0.0167 | 0.0006 | -0.000606 |
| 8500 | 9000 | 0.6311 | 0.0011 | -6.000570 |
| 9000 | 9500 | 0.8840 | 0.0028 | -0.000540 |
| 9500 | 9740 | 0.1150 | 0.8037 | -0.000519 |

Total horizon component : $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.323 . \Delta \rho_{d}^{2} F_{d}^{2}=0.0156$
Total forground component: $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.477, \Delta \rho_{d}^{2}{ }^{2} d^{2}=0.2529$

Table 6: The range distribution of the diffused power for $B_{0}=0.1, h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, h_{t}=105 \mathrm{~m}, \quad R=10 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5.20$.

| $\begin{aligned} & x_{\mathbf{a}} \\ & (\mathrm{m}) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & x_{b} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \Delta p_{d}^{2} \\ \sigma_{n} / \lambda=5 \end{gathered}$ | $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2} \mathrm{Fa}^{2}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & -\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{r}} / \mathrm{x} \\ & \text { (rad.) } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | $\sigma_{n} / \lambda=5$ | $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=2 \theta$ |  |
| 25 | 500 | -. 4678 | 0.2478 | 0.4677 |  |
| 500 | 1000 | 0.0229 | 0.0058 | 0. 0222 | -0.006666 |
| 1000 | 1500 | ¢.0120 | 0. 0019 | 9. 0095 | -0.004000 |
| 1500 | 2080 | 0.0087 | 0.8010 | 0.0055 | -0.002857 |
| 2800 | 2500 | 0.0075 | 0.0007 | ๑. 9837 | -0.002222 |
| 2500 | 3000 | 0.0665 | 0.0006 | 0. 0028 | -0.001818 |
| 3008 | 3500 | 0.0662 | 0.0005 | ๑. 8023 | -0.001538 |
| 3500 | 4000 | 0.0061 | 0.0004 | 0.0026 | -0.001333 |
| 4000 | 4500 | 0.0063 | 0.0004 | 0. 0018 | -0.001176 |
| 4500 | 5000 | 0.0067 | 0.0004 | -. 0017 | -6. 001052 |
| 5000 | 5500 | 9.0073 | 0.0004 | 0.0017 | -0.000952 |
| 5500 | 6000 | 0.0082 | 0.0004 | 0.0817 | -0.000869 |
| 6000 | 6500 | 0.0097 | 0.0005 | 0.0019 | -0.000800 |
| 6500 | 7000 | 0.8118 | 0.0005 | 0.0022 | -6.000740 |
| 7000 | 7500 | ©. 0153 | 0.0006 | 0.9026 | -0.000689 |
| 7500 | 8000 | 0.0211 | 0.0008 | 0.0034 | -0.000645 |
| 8000 | 8500 | 0. 0324 | 0.0012 | 0.0049 | -0.000606 |
| 8500 | 9000 | ©. 8578 | 0.0020 | 0.0082 | -0.000570 |
| 9000 | 9500 | ©. 1285 | 0.0040 | 6. 0173 | -0.000542 |

Total horizon component : $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.3732$
Total forground component: $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}=0.4678$

Table 7: The rance distribution of the diffused power for $\beta_{0}=0.1, h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{~h}_{\mathrm{t}}=1000 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{R}=100 \mathrm{~km}$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{h}} \lambda=5,20$.

| $\begin{aligned} & x_{a} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & x_{b} \\ & (m) \end{aligned}$ | $\Delta \rho_{d}^{2}$ <br> $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ | $\Delta \rho_{\text {d }}{ }_{\text {d }} \mathrm{Fd}^{2}$ |  | $-h_{r} / x$ <br> (rad.) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ | $\sigma_{n} / \lambda=20$ |  |
| 25 | 500 | 0.46830 | 0.23000 | 0.45990 |  |
| 500 | 1000 | 0.02000 | 0.00463 | 0.01947 | -0.006666 |
| 1000 | 1500 | -. 08948 | 0. 80135 | 0.00755 | -0.004000 |
| 1500 | 2000 | 0.00615 | 0.00063 | 0.00390 | -0.002857 |
| 2000 | 2500 | 0.00456 | 0.00036 | 0.00235 | -0.002222 |
| 2500 | 3000 | 0.00363 | 0.00024 | 0.00157 | -6.001818 |
| 3000 | 3500 | 0.00302 | 0.00017 | 0.00112 | -0.001538 |
| 3500 | 4000 | 0.00259 | 0.00012 | 0.00084 | -0.001333 |
| 4000 | 4500 | 0.00228 | $9.94 \mathrm{E}-5$ | 0. 00066 | -0.001176 |
| 4500 | 5000 | 0.00203 | 7.98E-5 | 0.00053 | -0.001052 |
| 5000 | 5500 | 0. 00184 | 6.57E-5 | 0.00043 | -0.000952 |
| 5500 | 6000 | ๑. 0.169 | 5.51E-5 | 0.00036 | -0.000869 |
| 6000 | 6500 | 0.00156 | 4.78E-5 | 0.00031 | -0.000800 |
| 6500 | 7000 | 0.00145 | 4.07E-5 | 0.00027 | -0.000740 |
| 7000 | 7500 | 0.00136 | 3.56E-5 | 0.00023 | -0.000689 |
| 7500 | 8000 | 0.00128 | 3.15E-5 | 0.00021 | -6.000645 |
| 8000 | 8500 | 0.00121 | 2.81E-5 | 0.00018 | -0.000606 |
| 8500 | 9000 | 0.00115 | 2.53E-5 | 0.80016 | -0.000570 |
| 9000 | 9500 | 0.00110 | 2.29E-5 | 0.00815 | -0.000542 |
| 9500 | 10000 | 0.00105 | 2.09E-5 | 0.00013 | -0.000512 |



```
    E&tさmatom
```


## 3-1 Introduction


#### Abstract

The difficulty in tracking low-fiying targets using conventional tracking methods arises from the presence of a strong surface reflection (specular multipath). White [3-1] diacussed this problem in considerable detail. Starting with a classical maximum likelihood analysis of two closely apaced targets, he developed two techniques which are capable of dealing with this problem. In a more recent paper, Cantrell et al. [3-2] studied the problem by applying a closed form of the maximum likelihood estimator to an array divided equally into three gubapertures (3SA-MLE). They have shown that the use of this technique sives a performance for resolution of close coherent sources (targets) very near to the optimum obtainable from the aperture were all the elementa aampled individually, the logs mounting to one or two dBs equivalent SNR. The snag with the technique is that this good performance is only obtainable for sources which are close to quadrature at the array centre and the performance deteriorates rapidiy if the relative source phases approach $\theta$ or $I I$. The best solution to this problem is to use four


subapertures but the cost involved in this are considerable since the closed form solution for the 3SA-MLE 18 excesgively complex. Morover it 18 desirable to keep the simple processing of $[3-2]$ if at all posible.

The technique which has been evolved to handle this situation is to divide the aperture into four groups but use these subapertures in two sets of three, one at each end of the array. The reason for thig is that if the two gianals are in-phase or anti-phase at the centre of one of the sets they cannot be so phased at the centre of the other if the source bearings are different and one or other of the sets will give an acceptable performance. To use this technique a method for determining which of the sete has the best chance of resolving the sources must be found and this geemed imposifble until, as a result of simulations it was found that if the sources are actually in-phase or anti-phase at the set phase centre and the complex amplitudes of the sources are computed within the Cantreli-type algorithm then the relative phase will be indicated correctly. Thus by processing both of the sets and selecting the one which has the most promising indicated aignal phases a good performance might be expected.

The main purpose of this chapter is to explore this posaibility in detail, starting with a complete atudy of the 3SA-MLE for different values of $\rho_{g} \cdot S / N$ and angular distance between the two targets. The effect of the taraet's type and the accuracy in estimating the phage difference between the two signals 18 presented in detail.

## 3-2 The maximum likelinood formulation for two

target and three subapertures


#### Abstract

In order to keep our diseussion gelf-contalned, and to make it easier to introduce some new remarks about aolving the problem of inphase and anti-phase signals, we briefly review the three subapartures method by Cantrell et al. [3-2]. In this method a 21 element, equaliy spaced linear array (elements spacing is $\lambda / 2$ ) is divided equaliy into three subapertures (each of 7 elements). Assuming a uniform amplitude weighting is used. the subaperture pattern can be approximated by:


$G\left(\theta-\theta_{p}\right)=(d / \lambda)[\sin (\pi \Omega d / \lambda)] /(\pi \Omega d / \lambda)$
where dis the subaperture spacing as shown in figure 3-1. $\theta_{p}$ is the pointing angle of the beams relative to the horizon, and $8=\sin (\theta)-\sin \left(\theta_{p}\right)$.

In the presence of a coherent multipath (apecular replection) the output signals $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$ from the three subapertures can be represented by:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{1}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(+j Z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left(+j Z_{2}\right)+n_{1} \\
& S_{2}=a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}+n_{2} \\
& S_{3}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(-j Z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left(-j Z_{2}\right)+n_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 3-1: The geometry of the three-subapertures array and two sources (target and its image).
where:

$$
\begin{align*}
& G_{1}=G\left(\theta_{t}-\theta_{p}\right)  \tag{3-3}\\
& G_{2}=G\left(\theta_{r}-\theta_{p}\right)  \tag{3-4}\\
& z_{1}=2 \pi d \theta_{t} / \lambda  \tag{3-5}\\
& z_{2}=2 \pi d \theta_{r} / \lambda \tag{3-6}
\end{align*}
$$

where:
$-\sin \left(\theta_{t}\right) \approx \theta_{t}$ and $\sin \left(\theta_{r}\right) \approx \theta_{r}$ for small angles is asbumed in (3-5) and (3-6) respectively.

- $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$ are the subaperture gains in the direction of the target and the specular multipath reapectively.
- $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are the complex amplitudes of the direct signal and its coherent multipath respectively ( $a_{2}=\rho_{s} a_{1}$ ).
- $\theta_{t}$ and $\theta_{r}$ are the target and multipath angles measured from the horizon.
- The reference phase center is taken at the centre of the array (at the middie subaperture).
- $n_{1} . n_{2}$ and $n_{3}$ are the Gaussian complex noige samples with zero mean and variance of $\sigma^{2}$.

In order to present (3-2) In a vector form we make the following simplification:

$$
A_{1}=a_{1} G_{1} \quad \text {, where } 1=1,2
$$

## and the vector form

$$
\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{W} \mathbf{A}+\mathbf{N}
$$

$S=\left[\begin{array}{l}s_{1} \\ s_{2} \\ s_{3}\end{array}\right] \quad W=\left[\begin{array}{ll}w_{11} & w_{12} \\ \cdots & \\ w_{21} & w_{22} \\ & \\ w_{31} & w_{32}\end{array}\right] \quad \cdots=\left[\begin{array}{l}A_{1} \\ \\ A_{2}\end{array}\right]$

$$
N^{T}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
n_{1} & n_{2} & n_{3}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Where $T$ represents the transpose, and the coefficients $W_{k i}$ represent the phase progression along the array for each angle of arrival at the center of each subaperture.

$$
\begin{align*}
& w_{k i}=\exp \left[j(2-k) z_{1}\right]  \tag{3-7}\\
& k=1,2,3 \quad \text { and } 1=1,2
\end{align*}
$$

where in the matrix $W$ the first column cantains the phase progression of the firgt source (target), and the second column represents the phase progression for the second source (specular multipath).

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{1}=\exp \left(j 2 \Pi d \theta_{t} / \lambda\right) \tag{3-8}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{2}=\exp \left(j 2 \pi d \theta_{r} / \lambda\right) \tag{3-9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\theta_{t}, \theta_{r}, w_{1}$ and $\omega_{2}$ are related to each other through (3-8) and (3-9). then solving for the best estimate of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ is sufficient.

Knowing that the complex noise vector $N$ is a Gaussian random process, then minimizing the square error is equivalent to maximizing the likelihood function [3-2].

$$
L=(S-W A)^{*}(S-W A)
$$

where * represents the complex conjugate transpose. If $W$ is known, then the value of $A$ which minimizes (3-10) is given by [3-2] as fOllow:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\left(W^{*} W^{-1} W^{*} s\right. \tag{3-11}
\end{equation*}
$$

by expanding the term in (3-11) we get:


$$
\begin{equation*}
G=9-\left(3+2 w_{1} w_{2}^{*}+2 w_{2} w_{1}^{*}+w_{1}^{2} w_{2}^{2}+w_{1}^{t^{2}} w_{2}^{2}\right) \tag{3-13}
\end{equation*}
$$

L can be written as follow from [3-2].

$$
\begin{align*}
& L=\left(1 / \sigma^{2}\right) \sum_{k=1}^{3} f_{k}^{2}  \tag{3-14}\\
& f_{k}=S_{k}-\left(w_{1}^{*}\right)^{k-1} A_{1}-\left(w_{2}^{*}\right) A_{2}-1 \tag{3-15}
\end{align*}
$$

by substituting (3-12) into (3-14) and (3-15), then the square error can be reduced to the following simple expression.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.L=\mid s_{1}-\left(w_{1}+w_{2}\right) s_{2}+w_{1} w_{2} s_{3}\right\} /\left(2+\left|w_{1}+w_{2}\right|^{2}\right) \tag{3-16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 3-2 shows the combining network which produce $L$ and figure 3-3 shows the combined three subaperture beam pattern associated with 1 t. As can be seen from figure 3-3. two nulls are produced in the direction of $\theta_{t}$ and $\theta_{r}$ (this is similar to the normal monopulse performance in case one target is present). Consequentiy, if the values of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ which make $L$ small can be determined then two nulls will be produced at both angles of arrival, $\Theta_{t}$ and $\Theta_{r}$.

Close examination of $L$ will show that its denominator represents the noise power output from the combining network in the absence of signal, while its numerator represents the signal output power in the absence of noise.

In order to simplify the discussion, let us represent the direct angle $\theta_{t}$ and the multipath one $\theta_{r}$ in terms of a


Figure 3-2 : Circuit implementation of the three-subapertures MLE and two sources.


Figure 3-3 : The antenna pattern for the circuit implementation in figure 3-2 of the 3SA-MLE, where the two nulls at $\mp 0.04$ radians represent the angular positions of the two sources
bisecting angle ( $\theta_{B}$ ) and an angular distance angle ( $\Theta_{D}$ ) from the bisector.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \theta_{t}=\theta_{B}+\theta_{D}  \tag{3-17}\\
& \theta_{r}=\theta_{B}-\theta_{D} \tag{3-18}
\end{align*}
$$

consequently

and the square error $L$ becomes as follow:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\left|s_{1}-w_{B}\left(w_{D}+w_{D}\right) s_{2}+w_{B}^{2} s_{3}\right|^{2} /\left(2+\left|w_{D}+w_{D}\right|^{* 2}\right) \tag{3-21}
\end{equation*}
$$

The problem is to minimize $L$ with respect to the following constraints:


Gordon [3-3] introduces additional constraints by considering the reflection coefficient of the surface to be leas than one. The purpose of this is to improve the algorithm performance when the two signals are inphase and the aignal -to-nolse ratio is maximum.

In the following, the MLE solution for the two targets and three subapertures geometry is shown for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases respectivelly.

## 3-2.1 Symmetric case solution:

In this case $W_{B}$ is known a priori and the critical points of $W_{D}$ (the pointa of zero slope of $L$ satigfying the condition $W_{D} W_{D}=1$ ) are given by the following from [3-2]:

$$
\begin{align*}
& w_{D}=1  \tag{3-24}\\
& w_{D}=-1 \\
& w_{D}=v / 2 \mp 5 \sqrt{1-(v / 2)^{2}} \tag{3-26}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
(3-25)
$$

Where $V$ is any root to the following equation which satisfies the condition

$$
\begin{align*}
& v<2 \\
& v^{2}+2\left[\left(2-\left|R_{t}\right|^{2}\right) /\left(R_{t}+R_{t}^{*}\right)\right] v-2=0 \tag{3-27}
\end{align*}
$$

and $R_{t} 1 s$ siven by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{t}=\left(s_{1}+w_{B}^{2} s_{3}\right) / w_{B} s_{2} \tag{3-28}
\end{equation*}
$$

The value of $L$ must be evaluated for each critical point of. WD and the one providing the absolute minimum value of $L$ gives the best estimate of the angle of arrival.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{t}=[\lambda /(2 \pi d)] \tan ^{-1}\left[I m\left(w_{D} w_{B}\right) / \operatorname{Re}\left(w_{D} w_{B}\right)\right] \tag{3-29}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are two special cases which occur with probability zero. The first occurs when $S_{2}=0$ and the
minimum value of $L$ is attained at both values $W_{D}=1$ and $W_{D}=-1$. The second special case occurs when the imaginary part of $R_{t}$ 1s zero, the real part is less than two, $S_{2}$ is not zero, and L can be made zero by settint $V=R_{t}$. This case occurs when there is no noise added to the received signals. More details of the minimization process for the function $L$ is given in [3-2] and appendix A3.

3-2.2 The nonmymmetric case solution:

In this case $w_{B}$ and $w_{D}$ are not known and we have to estimate both of them. The solution is given in [3-2] by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
u=\left(\left|s_{3}\right|^{2}-\left|s_{1}\right|^{2} /\left(s_{2} s_{3}^{*}-s_{1} s_{2}^{*}\right)\right. \tag{3-36}
\end{equation*}
$$

when the absolute value of $U$ is less than or equal to two, then the values of $W_{D}$ and $\omega_{B}$ which minimize L subject to the constraints $W_{D} \omega_{D}^{*}=1$ and $\omega_{B}{ }^{*}{ }_{B}=1$ are as follow:

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{B}=|\mathrm{U}| / \mathrm{U} \tag{3-31}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{D}=(|u| / 2\rangle \pm v \sqrt{1-|u|^{2} / 4} \tag{3-32}
\end{equation*}
$$

when the absolute value of $U$ is bigger than two then the solution will be:

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{D}=1+10 \tag{3-33}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $W_{B}$ is one of the following quartic equation roots
where:
$\alpha_{g}=s_{1}^{*} S_{2}+s_{2}^{*} S_{3}$
$\alpha=s_{1}^{*} s_{3}$



#### Abstract

Simulation results in figures 3-8, 3-14, and reference [3-2] have anown that the good performance of the 3SA-MLE 18 only obtainable when the phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) between the two coherent sources (target and image) at the centre of the aperture $1 s$ close to quadrature ( $\Pi / 4$ to $3 \pi / 4$ ) and declines very rapldiy when $\Psi$ approaches or $\Pi$ (only $\pi$ in the


 symmetric case). It is shown in figure $3-8$ that the performance accuracy 1 s very high when $\psi=\emptyset$ for the symmetric case: however this condition is not always possible and the general case is the nonsymmetric one. One way of improving the performance at $\Psi$ equal zero or $\Pi$ at the array centre is to change these values to others as close as possible to quadrature where the best estimate of the angle occurg. This Is done by dividing the array into four subarrays (subapertures) using them in two sets of three, one at each end of the array as shown in figure 3-4. The first get (AP1) outputs are $s_{1}, s_{2}$, and $s_{3}$; and the second set (AP2) outputs are $s_{2}, s_{3}$, and $s_{4}$. The idea behind dividing the aperture into two separate sets in processing is to enable us to compare between the values of $\Psi$ at the centre of each set and chose the one closer to quadrature. This is done by processing both sets of apertures according to the 3SA-MLE by Cantrell et al.[3-2] in parallel. The worst performance of the four subapertures technique (4SA-MLE) is when $\Psi$ equals 0 or $\Pi$ at the centre of the four subaperturea where the phase difference at the centre of both sets is equal. In the

Figure 3-4 : The geometry of four-subapertures array divided into two sets of three (AP1 \& AP2).
following, a mathematical and operational analysis for the four subapertures technique is carried out.

Let us assume that the phase centre is at the middie of the four subapertures array. The output of each subaperture is given by the following:

$$
\mathbf{a}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathbf{a}_{1} \mathbf{G}_{1} \exp \left[j(5 / 2-m) z_{1}\right]+\mathbf{a}_{2} G_{2} \exp \left[j(5 / 2-m) z_{2}\right]
$$

where $m=1,4$

By applying the 3SA-MLE solution in section 3-2 on both of AP1 and AP2 separately we get.
for AP1

and the cost function $L$ can be calculated according to (3-14) and (3-15) and given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\left|s_{1}-w_{B}\left(w_{D}+{ }^{*} w_{D}\right) s_{2}+w_{B}^{2} S_{3}\right|^{2} /\left(2+\left|w_{D}+{ }^{*}{ }_{D}\right|^{2}\right) \tag{3-38}
\end{equation*}
$$


and the cost function $L$ is as in (3-38) except that $s_{2}, s_{3}$, and $s_{4}$ must replace $s_{1}$. $s_{2}$, and $s_{3}$ respectively and is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\left|B_{2}-w_{B}\left(w_{D}+w_{D}^{*}\right) s_{3}+w_{B}^{2} s_{4}\right|^{2} /\left(2+\left|w_{D}+w_{D}^{*}\right|^{2}\right) \tag{3-39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Where the symmetric and nonsymmetric sources case:s studies for AP1 and AP2 are the game as in 3-2.1 and 3-2.2 and will not be repeated here. The phase difference $\Psi$ calculation procedure at the centres of AP1 and AP2 can be done as Pollows:
a- Minimize the cost function $L$ in (3-38) for AP1 and in (3-39) for AP2 independently according to the constraints given in section $3-2$ for the case of interest (i.e symmetric or nonsymmetric) and chose the absolute minimum which gives the best angle estimate for each set.
b- The values of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ can be calculated for each set independently from the corresponding $\omega_{B}$ and $w_{D}$ through (3-19) and (3-26) respectively.
c- The values of $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ for both of $A P 1$ and $A P 2$ can be

easily calculated by aubstituting the estimated values of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ in any two of the input equations in (3-37) d- The calculated values of a $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ for both of APl and AP2 are complex variables which can be represented by amplitude and phase as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
& a_{1}=a_{1 x}+j a_{1 j}=\left|a_{1}\right| \exp \left(j \Psi_{1}\right)  \tag{3-46}\\
& a_{2}=a_{2 x}+j a_{2 j}=\left|a_{2}\right| \exp \left(j \Psi_{2}\right) \tag{3-41}
\end{align*}
$$

where the abscripts $r$ and $j$ are to represent the real and imadinary parts of $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ respectively; also $\Psi_{1}$ and $\Psi_{2}$ ane the asgociated phases. By calculating the phase difference $\left(\Psi=\Psi_{1}-\Psi_{2}\right)$ for both of AP1 and APZ at their local centres separately and considering the ciosegt one to quadrature (the closest to $0^{\circ}$ in the symmetric case), then the corresponding aperture (1.e AP1 or AP2) would give the best angle estimate. Pigures $3-5$ and $3-6$ show illuatrating block diagram for these procedures for the symmetric and nongymmetric cases respectively.

In fact, $1 t$ is not necessary to go through the previous lengthy proceasing to the end if the target and ita image are symmetric, and a simpler method of solution does exist. For the symmetric case our main concern 1 when the two coherent gifnals are in phase opposition at the centre of the aperture where destructive interference takes place and the overali signal amplitude at the central subaperture 1 s very small (especialiy when the amplitudes of the two sianals are close) in comparifon with that of the othex two subapertures at its


Fig. 3-5 : Block diagram represents the four-subapertures processing technique for the symmetric case.


Fig. 3-6 : Block diagram represents the four-subapertures processing technique for the nonsymmetric case.
sides. So. by comparing the amplitude of the central subaperture of AP1 $\left(\left|s_{2}\right|\right)$ with that of the central subaperture of $A P 2\left(\left|B_{3}\right|\right)$ and considering the aperture (i.e AP1 or AP2) which gives the higher amplitude then $1 t$ would be the one which gives better angle estimation too. Figure 3-7 shows a block diagram presentation for this case which saves much unnecessary work load.

A new simple procedure to find out whether the two coherent signals from the target and its image are in-phase or phase opposition is shown in chapter 4 as a part op new simple trigonometric method to solve the multipath problem.

## 3-3.1 The phase shift fommulation

The geometry of a innar array and two sources is shown in figure 3-2i. The elements spacing is a half wavelength and the phase reference $1 s$ taken at the edge alement for convenience. By moving along the array the phase difference between the two incident signals ( $\Psi$ ) will change as a function of $\theta_{t}$ and $\theta_{r}$ and the distance moved (the distance moved $1 s n \lambda / 2$; where $n=1, N$ and $N$ is the number of elements in the array). The change in $\Psi$ can easily be found by calculating the phase lag for each source as follows:

For the first source:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{t 1}=\Psi_{t \theta}+2 \Pi(n \lambda / 2) \sin \left(\theta_{t}\right) / \lambda \tag{3-42}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the second source:


Fig. 3-7 : Block diagram represents the four-subapertures processing technique for the symmetric case using the amplitudes comparison method.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{r 1}=\Psi_{r \theta}+2 \Pi(n \lambda / 2) \sin \left(\theta_{r}\right) / \lambda \tag{3-43}
\end{equation*}
$$

Where $\Psi_{t b}$ and $\Psi_{r o}$ are the reference phaseg for the firgt and second source respectively and $\Psi_{t 1}, \Psi_{r 1}$ are the new ones.

By subtracting (3-43) from (3-42) and making the proper cancellations we get the new phase difference.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{t 1}-\Psi_{x 1}=\Psi_{t \emptyset}-\Psi_{r \varnothing}+n \Pi\left[\sin \left(\theta_{t}\right)-\ln \left(\theta_{p}\right)\right] \tag{3-44}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the change in the value of $\Psi$ is $\Delta \Psi$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Delta \Psi=\Psi_{t 1}-\Psi_{\mathbf{r} 1}-\Psi_{t \theta}+\Psi_{\mathbf{r \theta}}  \tag{3-45}\\
& \Delta \Psi=n \Pi\left(\theta_{t}-\theta_{r}\right) \tag{3-46}
\end{align*}
$$

by replacing the values of $\theta_{t}$ and $\Theta_{r}$ by equivelenta from (3-17) and (3-18) respectively we get the following.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \Psi=2 \mathrm{n} \Pi \Theta_{\mathrm{D}} \tag{3-47}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sin \left(\theta_{t}\right)=\theta_{t}$ and $\sin \left(\theta_{r}\right)=\theta_{r}$ are assumed in (3-46) for small incidence angles.

One can see from (3-47) that $\Delta \Psi$ depends on two factors, the angular distance from the bisector $\theta_{D}$ and the distance moved along the array in terms of the element number. Table 3-1 shows the values of $\Delta \Psi$ as a function of $n$ for different values of $\Theta_{D}$. In this table, the values of $\theta_{D}$ are taken as 0.5. 0.25 . 0.125 BW (BW is the three dBs beamwidths of the 21 elementa linear array mentioned above).

By closely examining the four subapertures technique for the nonsymmetric sources case (the general case) according to table $3-1$, one can aee that if $\Psi$ is or $\boldsymbol{T}$ at the middle of the array then a sood resolution can be expected if $\theta_{D}$ is close to 0.5 BW and deteriorates when $\theta_{D}$ gets amaliec. If $\Psi 18$ or $\Pi$ at the middle of AP1 or AP2 then the resolution is close to optimum when $\Theta_{D}$ is close to 0.5 BW and sood when it 180.25 BW and deteriorates for smaller values of $\theta_{D}$. If $\Psi$ is $\theta$ or $\Pi$ at the center of the external edge subeperture of AP1 or AP2 then the resolution is sood for $\theta_{D}$ close to 0.5 or 9.125 BW and close to optimum when $\theta_{D} 18$ close to 0.25 BW. Similar resulta can be easily shown for the symmetric case. However, these improvements are obvious in the simulation results in the next section.

## Table 3-1

The phase shift re, lationanip as a function of $n$ and $\theta_{D}$.

| n | $\Delta \Psi \quad$ (radians) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$ | $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ | $\theta_{\text {D }}=0.125 \mathrm{BW}$ |
| 3.5 | 0.9236 | 0.4618 | 0.2309 |
| 7.0 | 1.8472 | 0. 9236 | 0.4618 |
| 14 | 3.6945 | 1.8472 | 0. 9236 |


#### Abstract

All the simulations have been made using three (or four) subapertures of seven elements each, interelement spacing being $\lambda / 2$. Gaussian noise of zero mean and $\sigma^{2}$ variance was added to the signals and one thousand trials were made to find the average errors in the angle estimation at each given phase difference. The root mean square (RMS) error was calculated as follows:


```
error \(_{1}=\theta_{t}-\hat{\theta}_{t}\)
```

error $_{2}=\theta_{r}-\hat{\theta}_{r}$
RMS angle-of-arrival error $=\sqrt{\left.\frac{\sum(\operatorname{error}}{1} 2+\operatorname{error}_{2}^{2}\right)} \sqrt{2 \times \text { number of trials }}$
where $\hat{\theta}_{t}$ and $\hat{\theta}_{r}$ are the estimated angles of arrival for the direct signal and its coherent multipath. The error has also been normalized to the 3 dB beamwidth of the whole array calculated as follows [3-4]:

3 dB beamwidth $(B W)=102 / \mathrm{N}$
(in degrees)

```
where, N is the number of elements in the array (interelement
spacing is }\lambda/2)\mathrm{ . The signal to nolge ratio (S/N) is
calculated for the direct signal only, as recelved by the
```

main beam of the whole array and defined from [3-2] as follows.

For three-subapertures:

$$
(S / N) d B=10 \log \left[\left(3\left(G_{1}\left|a_{1}\right|^{2}\right) /\left(2 \sigma^{2}\right)\right]\right.
$$

and for four-subapertures:

$$
(S / N) d B=16 \log \left[\left(4\left(G_{1}\left|a_{1}\right|\right)^{2}\right) /\left(2 \sigma^{2}\right)\right]
$$


#### Abstract

There are two practical methods for separating the direct angle bearing from the coherent multipath one. The firgt is by calculating the amplitudes of the two gignals, where the angle associated with the higher amplitude represents the direct angle of arrival and the one associated with the smaller amplitude represents the multipath angle of arrival. This method adds extra unnecessary load to the system, also it is very critical when the two signals amplitudes are very close. The other way is to separate the two angles according to their sign, i.e the positive angle repregents the direct angle of arrival and the negative angle representa the multipath one (in case of confusion, the most positive one relative to the horizon is taken to be the direct angle and the opposite for the multipath one). This method depends on the fact that the target is always above the surface and has the higher angle above the horizon. In the simulation performed for this study of a low-flying target over a smooth surface, the second method was chosen, since it is more likely to be used in a practical system.


The target . model used in this simulation is Swerling case 5 type (SW.5), where the amplitude of the received signal is constant from pulse to pulse (from snap-shot to snap-shot. In the case that one snap-shot per pulse is taken). For comparison, a signal with a fluctuating amplitude according to Swerling case 2 target type (SW. 2) is considered too, where the amplitude of the received signal changes randomiy from pulse to pulse. It is generated in simulation by taking the real and imaginary parts of the two signals from a Gausisian sequence with zero mean and given variance [3-5]. A noisy signal is generated using (3-2) for the 3SA-MLE and (3-37) for the 4SA-MLE according to the target's models above, and the solutions were computed for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases for the three and four subapertures methods. The phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) is always taken to be multiples of 22.5 degrees in the range from $\theta^{\circ}$ to 180. From now on the absolute value of the specular reflection will be refered to as $\rho_{g}$.

A histogram of simulation results is uged to demonstrate the performance of the $3 S A-M L E$ and $4 S A-M L E$ at some cases. where the rms angle-of-arrival (+beamwidth) is divided into 20 zones of accuracy, from 0.0-0.05. .......0.9-0.95. $>0.95$.

3-4.1 The symmetric case solution



Figure3-8 : RMS error of symmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, SW. 2 target's type is shown
(nonfluctuating amplitude). For comparison the corresponding result 18 shown for SW. 2 target; type (fluctuating amplitude) only for the case $\theta_{D}=6.25 \mathrm{BW}$. In comparing the solution using SW. 5 target's type to that using SW. 2 . we find that the pirst is much more accurate than the second over all values of $\Psi$ with average rms angle-of-arrival error enhancement of 0.96 . The rma error 1s larger when $\Psi=380^{\circ}$ and very small when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$, also it increases when $\theta_{D}$ decreases. Cantrel et.al. [3-2] show that the resolution obtained is very close to the optimum obtainable from the array were all elements sampled individually and it produces smaller error than the corresponding Cramer-Rao bounds (this is because the MLE is slightly biased). Figure $3-9$ presents the $S / N$ performance for SW. 5 signal type with $\Theta_{B}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$. $\rho_{g}=0.9$, and $S / N=30.20 .10$ dB. In general, one concludes that the rms error increases as the $S / N$ decreases. Figure 3-10 presents the performance with different values of $p_{s}$ (i.e with different relative power between the two coherent sources). where $\Theta_{B}=0, \quad \theta_{D}=0.25$ BW, $S / N=30 \quad d B$, and $\rho_{g}=0.9 .0 .5 .0 .1$. In general, when $\rho_{g}$ decreases the performance sets better when the absolute value of $\Psi$ is close to the out of phage cage (generally when $\Psi>90^{\circ}$. depends on $\rho_{g}$ ) and a little worse elsewhere. The improvement at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ is very substantial where the rms error drops from 0. 24 to just 0.066 when $\rho_{s}$ changes from 0.9 to 0.1. he main reason behind this improvement is that when the two signals are in anti-phase (or close) and their relative amplitudes are close (such as when $\rho_{g}=0.9$ ) then destructive interference occurs,


Figure 3-9 : RMS error of symmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{S}=0.9$


Figure 3-10 : RMS error of symmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
leading to very low $S / N$. But when the relative amplitudes are not cloae (such as when $\rho_{g}=0.5$ or 0.1) then the destructive interference is less pronounced, leading to higher $S / N$ and in turn to better accuracy. The increage in the rms error at small $\Psi$ when $\rho_{g}=0.5 .0 .1$ is very small where it rises from 0.028 at $\rho_{g}=0.9$ to 0.053 at $\rho_{g}=0.1$ which is very negilgible in comparison with the improvement obtained when $\Psi$ is close to $180^{\circ}$ (generally $\Psi>90^{\circ}$ ).

Before discussing the new four-subapertures method results, we examine the case of the imaginary angle[3-3] occurrence (1.e when $\theta_{t}=\Theta_{r}$ ) and the accuracy in eatimating the phase differene from the estimated ancles of arrival of the target and its coherent multipath. Table 3-2 shows computer simulation results for the frequency of occurrences of the imaginary angle (Im-ang) and when the absolute error of the estimated value of $\Psi$ is sreater than a siven value (assumed here to be $10^{\circ}$ ) from $1 t s$ true one (ph-div). in 1000 trials for $\theta_{B}=0 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=38 \mathrm{~dB}$. $\rho_{\mathrm{g}}=0.9$. and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$ for SW. 5 target's type (and SW. 2 target': type just at $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW for comparison). The imaginary angle occurrence 1s zero over all values of $\Psi$ when $\theta_{D}=0.5$ sw excedt at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ Where it occures 203 times which might explains the bad performance at this point. When $\theta_{D}$ decreases the Im-ang occurrence increases over all values of $\Psi$ leading to degradation in the angle eatimation accuracy as shown in figure 3-8. The estimated value of $\Psi$ is worst when the two signals are close to phase opposition as can be seen from the table (mainly becauee of the decrease in the $S / N$ ) with one

Table 3-2 The imaginary ante and erroneous estimated phase difference ( $>10^{\circ}$ deviation from the true value) occurrences in the symmetric $3 S A-M L E$ for $\quad \theta_{B}=\varnothing$. $\quad S / N=30$ dB. $\rho_{g}=0.9$. $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$. for 1000 trials at each phage shown. For comparison the results for $S W, 2$ target's type 18 shown when $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

| Phase | 0. 5 BW |  | 0.25 BW |  |  |  | 0. 125 BW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Im-ang. <br> SW. 5 | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 | IM-ang |  | Ph-div. |  | $I M-a n t$ <br> SW. 5 | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 |
|  |  |  | SW. 5 | SW. 2 | SW. 5 | SW. 2 |  |  |
| 0.0 | 6 | 0 | 0 | 45 | 10 | 195 | 122 | 213 |
| 22.5 | 0 | 6 | $\emptyset$ | 47 | 35 | 269 | 134 | $43 i$ |
| 45.0 | 0 | 0 | 1. | 51 | 120 | 376 | 154 | 638 |
| 67.5 | 9 | 1 | 1 | 61 | 229 | 451 | 184 | 718 |
| 90.0 | $\square$ | 1 | 1 | 81 | 312 | 522 | 225 | 792 |
| 112.5 | 0 | 5 | 5 | 99 | 366 | 611 | 263 | 813 |
| 135.0 | 0 | 5 | 40 | 172 | 395 | 613 | 296 | 821 |
| 157.5 | 0 | 11 | 179 | 284 | 415 | 649 | 407 | 826 |
| 180.0 | 203 | 0 | 422 | 416 | 18 | 181 | 482 | 112 |

exception at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where the imasinary angle occurs very frequentiy. The reason behind this exception is that when an imaeinary angie occurs, a test is carried out to find Whether the two signals are ciose to in-phage or anti-phase conditions. The-test condition that whenever the two signals are anti-phase at the centre of the arras, then $\left|S_{2}\right|<\left|S_{3}\right|$ and $\left|S_{2}\right|<\left|S_{1}\right|$ (the opposite oceurs when the two gignale are In ohage agreement at the arras's centre). Thus. depending on the above conditions the value of $\Psi 18$ set to either $\boldsymbol{o}^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ whenever the imagimary angle occurs, leading to nigh accuracy in estimating the value of. $\Psi$ when the two signala are anti-phase in partioular. $\because \quad$ The frequency of occurrence of ph-div increases as $\theta_{D}$ decreaseg, as can be seen from the table. In comparing with the SW. 2 target type for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$, one conciudea that the frequeney of ocourrences of the imaginary angle and the erroneous Values of the estimated $\Psi$ is much nisher for the second type. This explains the increase in the rms error shown in figure 3-8. In figure $3-11$ a nistorram is shown for both types where the rmg error of the sw. 5 target type is shown to be within the range $0-0.05$ for $78 \%$ of the time and $0.05-0.1$ for $18 \%$ while for the second target type it drops to $55 \%$ and $24 \%$ respectively. Besides, one can see the frequent occurrence of the imaginary angle in the second case. In conciusion, the bigger the angular seperation, and the smalier the phase difference between the two targets, the better the accuracy in estimating the value of $\Psi$, and lesa the occurrence of 1maginary angles.


Figure 3-11 :Histogram shows the performance of the symmetric 3SA-MLE for Sweriling cases 2 . and 5 target's type $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9, \Psi=90^{\circ}$.

According to the discussion above and the block diagram in sigure 3-5 a computer simulation is carried out to determine the effectiveness of the 4SA-MLE in improving the performance of the symmetric case of the $3 S A-M L E$ when the two targeta are in (or close to) phase opposition. Figure 3-12 shows the simulation results of the symmetric 4SA-MLE for $\theta_{B}=0 . \rho_{B}=0.9, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .325$ BW, using SW. 5 target's type. For comparison 3SA-MLE is shown only for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}(27$ elements are used ingted of 28 for the 4SA-MLE to be able to divide into three-equal-subapertures). In comparing each curve with its correspondent in pigure 3-8 (keoping in mind that we use just $3 / 4$ of the total array's elements in the four-suabapertures method, while the rms error is normalized to $3 d B$ beamwidth of the whole array) one can see a ble reduction in the ras error when $\Psi$ is close to $180^{\circ}$ in general and in particular when $\theta_{D}$ is large where the accuracy increases sharply. Alittle degredation at small values of $\Psi$ is shown mainly related to the normalization method and the lower $S / N$ per subaperture ( 1.2 dB less), and the deviation of the new chosen value of $\Psi$ from $0^{\circ}$. In comparing the result of 3 SA-MLE (using 27 elements) with its correspondent $4 S A-M L E$ ones (using 28 elements) for $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW as shown on the same figure, a big improvement is shown when $\Psi$ is clobe to anti-phase condition and a little degredation elsewhere (rmserror increases by 0.018 at $\Psi=\dot{\theta}$ ). The main reason for this degredation 18 the higher $S / N$ per subaperture for the $3 S A-M L E$ case ( $\propto 1 \mathrm{~dB}$ ), in comparison with the 4SA-MLE ones. Figure 3-13 shows a histogram of resuits for $\theta_{D}=6.25 \mathrm{BW}$


Figure 3-12 : RMS error of symmetric 4SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-MLE is shown for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$


Figure 3-13 :Histogram shows the performance of the symmetric 3SA-MLE and 4SA-MLE for Swerling cases 5 target type $\Theta_{B}=0, \quad \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, S / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9, \Psi=180$.
$\rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$. $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0$, and $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ for the $35 A-M L E$ and the 4SA-MLE, where the rms error (tbeamwidth) apears to be within the range 0-0.1 for $52 \%$ of the time for the $4 S A-M L E$ while 1t drops to $20 \%$ for the $3 S A-M L E$. Also, one can see the high occurrence of imaginary and erroneous angles ( $44 \%$ of time) for the 3SA-MLE in comparison with that of the 4SA-MLE ones ( $9 \%$ of time)

In the above four-subaperture method we used the estimated phase difference to decide which set gives the best angle estimation. This technique required paraliel procesaing for two sets of three subapertures (AP1 and AP2). which double the processing load and increases the cost of the system as we have seen in section $3-3$ where a simpler system which was suggested depending on amplitude comparison of the Input signals from the two subapertures in the middle of the four-subapertures' array. Here, figure 3-14 shows the simulation results for the $4 S A-M L E$ (amplitude comparison method) according to the block diagram shown in figure 3-7 for $\theta_{B}=0$. $S / N=30$ dB. $\rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$ and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 . \mathrm{BW}$. In comparing these results with their correspondents in figure 3-12 one can see that the rms error 18 the same for all values of $\Psi$ when $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 \mathrm{BW}$ with the exception at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where this method shows very little increase in the rms error (rms error increases by 0.063 for $\Theta_{D}=6.5$ BW. and 0.02 for $\left.\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}\right)$. When $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.125 \mathrm{BW}$ this method appears to work better than the previous one when $\Psi>90^{\circ}$ and worse when $\Psi<90^{\circ}$. Both methods shows the same accuracy when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$.


Figure 3-14: RMS error of symmetric 4SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$, amplitudes comparison method.

Figure 3-15 shows the simulation results of the 3SA-MLE for a target with $\theta_{B}=0$. $\rho_{B}=0.9 . \quad S / N=30$ dB, and $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125$ BW, uging sW. 5 target type (for comparison the corresponding results are shown for the sW. 2 target type only when $\Theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$. in comparing the solutions, one finds that the rms error increases as $\theta_{D}$ decreases, and the worst estimation occurs when the two sources are in-phase or anti-phase ( $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ ) or close to either as can be $e=e n$ from the curves. The best accuracy is obtalned when the two sources are in phase quadrature for all values of $\theta_{D}$ except when $\Theta_{D}=0.125$ BW where the optimum accuracy is obtained at $\Psi=112^{\circ}$. The accuracy obtained when $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ for the SW. 5 target type 18 muen nigher than that for the SW. 2 target type, where the rms error increases by 0.07 for the second at $\Psi=90^{\circ}$. Cantrellet.al. [3-2] show that the resolution obtained is very close to the optimum obtainable from the same array were all the elements ampled individually and it produces smaller rms error than that of the corresponding Cramer-Rao bounds [3-6,7]. Figure 3-16 shows the $S / N$ performance of the $3 S A-M L E$ for $\theta_{B}=0, \theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$. $\rho_{g}=0.9$. and $S / N=30.20 .10 \mathrm{~dB}$, where the rms error 1 s ghown to increase as the $S / N$ decreases over all values of $\Psi$. Figure 3-17 presents the performance of the 3SA-MLE for different values of the specular reflection coefficient for $\theta_{B}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and $\rho_{\mathrm{g}}=0.9 .6 .5 .0 .1$. In general. When $p_{g}$ decreases the rms error increases, especially when $p_{s}$


Figure 3-15: RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, SW. 2 target's type is shown


Figure 3-16: RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$


Figure 3-17 : RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for

$$
\Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \Theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}
$$

is very smali (0.1). In figure $3-18$ the rms error in estimating the direct angle and the multipath one are calculated separately for $\rho_{g}=0.1 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{AB}, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$. $\theta_{B}=0$. Where the rms error for the fingt is shown to be much less that for the second over all values of $\Psi$. The average rms error for the first 18 about 0.2 in comparison with 0.38 for the second over all values of $\Psi$. The reason is the individual $S / N$ of each source which is very high for the first in comparison with the second which provides a shallow null (minimum $L$ ) in the pattern leading to nigher error.

As we nave seen from the results above, the performance of the nonsymmetric $3 S A-M L E$ is very poor when the target and its coherent multipath are in-phase or anti-phase. In section 3-3 a new 4SA-MLE method is introduced to solve this problem and improve the performance in these two regions. Before showing the simulation results for this method we examine the case of the imaginary angle occurrence and the accuracy obtained in estimating the phase difference $\Psi$ from the estimated angles of arrival of the two sources. Table 3-3 shows computer simulation results for the prequency of occurrences of the imaginary ancle (Im-ang) and when the absolute error of the estimated value of $\Psi$ is greater than a given value (taken here to be $10^{\circ}$ ) from its true one (ph-div). for $\theta_{B}=0 . S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$, and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$ for SW. 5 target's type (and SW. 2 target's type jugt when $\Theta_{D}=0.25$ BW for comparison). The imaginary angle occurrence is zero over all values of $\Psi$ when $\Theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$, except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where it occurs 402 times out of 1000 , which might explain the bad


Figure 3-18: RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.1$

Table 3-3 The imaginary angle and erroneous estimated phase difference ( $>10^{\circ}$ deviation from the true value) occurrences in the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE for $\theta_{B}=0, \quad S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \quad \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$. $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$, for 1000 trials at each phase shown. For comparison the results for $S W .2$ target's type is shown when $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

| Phase | 0.5 BW |  | 0.25 BW |  |  |  | 0.125 BW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Im-anc. <br> SW. 5 | Ph-div.$\text { SW. } 5$ | IM-ang |  | Ph-div. |  | $\text { IM-ang. } P h-d i v .$ <br> SW. 5 SW. 5 |  |
|  |  |  | SW. 5 | SW. 2 | SW. 5 | SW. 2 |  |  |
| 0.0 | 0 | 753 | 0 | 8 | 741 | 819 | 9 | 886 |
| 22.5 | $B$ | 0 | $\emptyset$ | 9 | 128 | 417 | 33 | 683 |
| 45.8 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 11 | 133 | 399 | 60 | 614 |
| 67.5 | 0 | 1 | 6 | 24 | 221 | 455 | 99 | 667 |
| 90.0 | 6 | 2 | 1 | 45 | 314 | 522 | 157 | 735 |
| 112.5 | 0 | 5 | 9 | 75 | 365 | 572 | 224 | 801 |
| 135.0 | 0 | 11 | 35 | 169 | 438 | 606 | 298 | 842 |
| 157.5 | 0 | 19 | 195 | 287 | 445 | 632 | 402 | 856 |
| 180.0 | 402 | 1 | 397 | 388 | 23 | 164 | 385 | 143 |

performance at this point. When $\Theta_{D}$ decreases the imarinary angle occurrence increases over all values of $\Psi$ as can be geen from the table. The occurrence of the imaginary angle at $\Psi=\theta^{\circ}$ is the smallest, but it does not mean that the estimated angle is accurate, in fact it is very erroneous as can be seen from figure 3-15. The estimated value of $\Psi$ is the worgt when the two sources are in phase agreement, while It is very accurate when they are in phase opposition as can be seen from table 3-3. The reason beyond this high accuracy (when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ ) 18 that, when an imaginary angle occurs a test is carried out to find whether the two signals are close to in-phase or anti-phase conditions depending on the same facts explained in aection 3-4.1. Also, this explains the poor estimation of the value of $\Psi$ when its true value is zero and where the imaginary angle occurrence is very smali. The frequency of occurcence of the imaginary angle and the erroneous values of the estimated $\Psi$ for the SW. 2 target type is higher than that for SW. 5 type as can be seen from the table for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

According to the above discusiion and the block diagram in figure 3-6 a computer simulation is carried out to express the effectiveness of the $4 S A-M L E$ method to improve the nonsymmetric case of the $3 S A-M L E$ performance when $\Psi=0$ or 189. Figure $3-19$ shows these results for $\theta_{B}=0$. $S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}$. $\rho_{g}=0.9 . \theta_{D}=0.5$. 0.25. 0.125 BW, using sw. 5 target's type. For comparison 3SA-MLE 18 shown only for $\theta_{D}=6.25 \mathrm{BW}(27$ elements are used insted of 28). By comparing each curve with its correspondent in figure $3-15$ (keeping in mind that


Figure 3-19 : RMS error of nonsymmetric 4SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-MLE is shown for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
we use juet $3 / 4$ of the total elements of the array for the 4SA-MLE method, while the rms error is normalized to the $3 d B$ beamwidth of the whole array) one can see a larae reduction In the rms error for $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25$ BW when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ (or cloge to any of them) and only a very small increage when $\Psi$ is close to quadrature (mainly related to smaller $S / N$ per subaperture, the 3dB noxmalization, and the deviation of the new chosen value of $\Psi$ from the quadrature). The rma error appears to be worse for $\theta_{D}=0.125$ BW, which is mainly related to the inaccurate estimation of the phase difference which the performance of the new method depends on. In comparing the $3 S A-M L E$ ( 27 elements) and the $4 S A-M L E$ one Por $\theta_{D}=6.25 \mathrm{BW}$ a big improvement can be seen when the phase difference between the two sources 18 close to $0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ and a little degredation when it is close to quadrature for the same reasons explained above. Figure $3-20$ shows a higtogram of results for $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW. $\theta_{B}=0, \rho_{8}=0.9 . \quad \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30$ dB, and $\Psi=0.180^{\circ}$ for the three and four subapertures method, where the rms error (tbeamwidth) Por the firgt ig within the range g-0. 1 for $18 \%$ of the time when $\Psi=\sigma^{\circ}$ and $8 \%$ when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$, while $1 t$ rises to $45 \%$ and $44 \%$ for the second reapectively. Thus. one can conclude that the four-subapertures method for solving the in-phase and anti-phese problem (Just the anti-phage for the symmetric case) 18 very effective, but it does introduce extra work load in the nongymmetric solution case. Therefore a new way 1 s needed to reduce thig work 1oad. if posBible, which will be shown as a part of a new algorithm in the next chapter.
(a)


RMS angle-of-arrival error (beamwidths)


RMS angle-of-arrival error (beamwldths)
Figure 3-20 : Histogram shows the performance of the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE and 4SA-MLE for Swerling case 5 target type $\Theta_{B}=0, \Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW} . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9$. (a)- for $\psi=0.0^{\circ}$, (b) - for $\psi=180^{\circ}$.


Figure 3-21 : The geometry of g linear array and two sources

## APPENDIX A3

## The Critical Points For The Symmetric Solution

Let $f(x, y)$ be an analytic function in the two variables $x, y$ and consider finding the extreme values of $f\left(w_{D}, w_{D}^{*}\right)$. Where $W_{D}$ varies subject to the constraint $W_{D} w_{D}^{*}=1$

$$
w_{D}=\exp (1 \theta) \quad, \quad w_{D}^{*}=\exp (-1 \theta)
$$

```
where }0\mathrm{ is a variable.
By taking the derivative of f with respect to }0\mathrm{ we get:
```

$(d / d \theta) f\left(w_{D}, w_{D}^{*}\right)=\partial f / \partial w_{D}\left(d w_{D} / d \theta\right)+\left(\partial f / \partial w_{D}^{*} ;\left(d w_{D}^{*} / d \theta\right)\right.$
$\left.=1\left[w_{D}^{\prime} \partial f / \partial w_{D}{ }^{\prime}-w_{D}^{*} \partial f / \partial w_{D}^{*}\right]\right]$

By solving equation (A3-1), the critical points of $f\left(w_{D}, W_{D}\right)$ gubject to the constraint $W_{D} W_{D}^{*}=1$ can be found:
$w_{D}: \partial f / \partial w_{D}-w_{D}^{*} \partial f / \partial w_{D}^{*}=0$

Now, let $u s$ apply ( $\mathrm{A} 3-2$ ) to the cost function $L$ in (3-21).
$w_{D} \partial L / \partial w_{D}-w_{D}^{*} \partial L / \partial w_{D}^{*}=0$
$\left(w_{D}-w_{D}^{*}\right), \partial L / \partial v=\sigma$, where $v=w_{D}+w_{D}^{*}$
and $w_{B}$ is known for the symmetric case.
From (A3-4) the critical points are siven by the values of $W_{D}$. $W_{D}^{*}$ which obey the following two relations


The relation in $(A 3-5)$ is possible only in case $W_{D}=W_{D}^{*}=\mp 1$ and by proceeding in (A3-6) we find.

$$
\partial \mathrm{L} / \partial \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}+2 \mathrm{~V} \Delta-2=0
$$

where:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Delta=\left(2-\left|R_{t}\right|^{2}\right) /\left(R_{t}+R_{t}^{*}\right) \\
& R_{p}\left(S_{1}+w_{B}^{2} S_{3}\right) / w_{B} S_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

By solving $V=w_{D}+w_{D}^{*}=w_{D}+1 / w_{D}$ for $w_{D}$ we get

$$
w_{D}=v / 2 \neq j \sqrt{1-(v / 2)^{2}}
$$

## APPENDIX B3

## The Critical Points For The Nonsymmetric Solution

The cost function $L$ to be minimized is given by the following:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\left|s_{1}-a_{1}\right|^{2}+\left|s_{2}-a_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|s_{3}-a_{3}\right|^{2} \tag{B3-1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where:

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{k}=A_{1}\left(w_{1}^{*}\right)+A_{2}\left({ }_{w_{2}^{*}}^{*}\right) \quad . \quad k=1,2,3 \tag{B3-2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us consider making the value of $L$ equal zero with real angles, making the following assumptions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu=\left(w_{1}^{*}+w_{2}^{*}\right)^{-1} \tag{B3-3}
\end{equation*}
$$

if $\left|w_{1}\right|=\left|w_{2}\right|=1$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu / \stackrel{*}{\mu}=\left(w_{1}+w_{2}\right) /\left(w_{1}^{*}+w_{2}^{*}\right)=w_{1} w_{2} \tag{83-4}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (B3-2) and (B3-4) we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{2}=\stackrel{\sim}{\mu} q_{1}+\mu q_{3} \tag{83-5}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, $L$ can be made to vanish to zero by putting $q_{1}=S_{1}$. $q_{3}=S_{3}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{2}=s_{2}=\mu^{*} s_{1}+\mu s_{3} \tag{B3-6}
\end{equation*}
$$

to solve (B3-6) for $\mu$, we take its confugate and the following two equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& s_{2}=\stackrel{*}{\mu} s_{1}+\mu s_{3}  \tag{B3-7}\\
& s_{2}^{*}=\mu s_{1}^{*}+{ }_{\mu}^{*} s_{3}^{*} \tag{B3-8}
\end{align*}
$$

Equations (B3-7) and (B3-8) represent a inear system in $\mu$ and $\mu$ : solving for $\mu$

$$
\mu=\left(s_{2} s_{3}^{*}-s_{1} s_{2}^{*}\right) /\left(\left|s_{3}\right|^{2}-\left|s_{1}\right|^{2}\right)=1 / u
$$

where $U$ 1s shown in $(3-30)$. On realising that $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ are the roots of the following equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta=\left(w-w_{1}^{*}\right)\left(w-w_{2}^{*}\right)=w^{2}-(1 / \mu) w+\frac{p^{4}}{} / \mu \tag{83-9}
\end{equation*}
$$

the values of $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$ can be calculated from $\mu$ by solving (B3-9)

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\stackrel{*}{w_{1}}}_{*}=\left(1+j \sqrt{\left.4|\mu|^{2}-1\right) / 2 \mu}\right.  \tag{B3-10}\\
& {\stackrel{w}{w_{2}}}_{*}=\left(1-j \sqrt{\left.4|\mu|^{2}-1\right) / 2 \mu}\right. \tag{B3-11}
\end{align*}
$$

$A s$ one can see from (B3-10) and (B3-11) the absolute values of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ are equal to one only if $\mu \geqslant 1 / 2$ (or equivalentiy. $|u|>2)$.

The values of $W_{B}$ and $w_{D}$ can be obtained easily from the next two equations:

$$
w_{B}^{2}=w_{1} w_{2} \quad . \quad w_{D}^{2}=w_{1} w_{2}^{*}
$$

Now, let us look at the case when $\mu<1 / 2$. The proof for finding the values of $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$ which minimize the cost function $L$ is too lengthy and the result are given in [3-2]. The value of $L$ is minimized when $w_{1}=w_{2}$ or equivalently when $\omega_{D}=1$. In this case the cost function $1 s$ reduced to

$$
L=1 / 6\left|s_{1}-2 w_{B} s_{2}+w_{B}^{2} s_{3}\right|^{2}
$$

and the explicit presentation of $L$ as a function of $w_{B}$ and $w_{B}^{*}$ 1s given by:

$$
L=1 / 6\left(S_{1}-2 w_{B} S_{2}+w_{B}^{2} S_{3}\right)\left(S_{1}^{*}-2 w_{B}^{*} S_{2}^{*}+w_{B}^{*} S_{3}^{*}\right)
$$

and according to appendix $A 3$ the critical values of $W_{B}$ subject to the given constraints are the solution to the following equation

$$
w_{B}\left(\partial L / \partial w_{B}\right)-w_{B}^{*}\left(\partial L / \partial w_{B}^{*}\right)=0
$$

straightforward calculation shows that (B3-12) reduces to the form given in (3-34).

## TheTr土monometmicminn

 ResonumionMethod
## 4-1 Introduction


#### Abstract

The tracking of a low-flying target in the presence of strong reflection from the underlying smooth surface is a problem area of considerable interest in radar. The simplest closed-form solution so far is the three-subaperture maximum likelihood method discussed in the previous chapter, which it Involves the solution of a quartic equation for the nonsymmetric case and a quadratic equation for the symmetric case. Also, a new four-subapertures technique (which depends on estimating the value of the phase difference between the two sources at the array centre) to improve the performance accuracy when the two sources are close to an in-phase or anti-phase condition is presented with extensive discussion and simulation results.


In this chapter a new simple three-subapertures trigonometric method (3SA-TRM) to solve the coherent multipath probiem is presented. It has a similar performance to the $3 S A-M L E$ in general and is simpler in practical implementation. A simple new procedure to find out whether the two coherent signals are close to an in-phase or


#### Abstract

anti-phase condition is derived and applied to the four-subapertures technique discussed in the previous chapter. The advantages of this procedure in saving time and reducing work load are discussed and simulation results are shown. Additionally. new three and four subapertures techniques (symm. and nonsymm., 384SA-TRM) improve the performance of this algorithm when $\Psi=\theta^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$. These preserve the accuracy obtainable when using the full aperture, divided into three-subapertures only, both when $\Psi$ 18 close to quadrature and when $\Psi$ is close to zero for the nonsymmetric and symmetric cases respectiviy. Simulation results are shown.


The overall emphasis will be mainly on comparing the performance of this new method (3SA-TRM) with the 3SA-MLE method and showing its advantages.

## 4-2 Trigonometric solution formulation

Assume the same ilnear array, divided into threesubapertures, used in the previous chapter (section 3-2) with the same radar-target seometry and its associated angular relations shown in figure $3-1$. The outputs of the threesubapertures will be the same as those shown in equation (3-2) and are repeated here for convenience as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
& S_{1}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(+j Z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left(+j Z_{2}\right)+n_{1}  \tag{4-1}\\
& S_{2}=a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}+n_{2} \\
& S_{3}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(-j Z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left(-j Z_{2}\right)+n_{3} \tag{4-3}
\end{align*}
$$

The description of each term in the above equations is shown In chapter 3 and will not be repeated here.

The noise terms $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right)$ in the above equations will now be neslected and a solution for $\theta_{B}$ and $\theta_{D}$ found. Taking the sum of equation (4-1) and (4-3) and dividing by equation (4-2) sives:
$\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}=2\left[a_{1} G_{1} \cos \left(z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \cos \left(Z_{2}\right)\right] /\left(a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right)$

Then by subtracting equation (4-3) from (4-1) and dividing by (4-2) we get the following:
$\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}=\mathrm{J} 2\left[a_{1} G_{1} \sin \left(Z_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \sin \left(Z_{2}\right)\right] /\left(a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right)$ (4-5)

By substituting the values of $Z_{1}$ and $z_{2}$ into equations (4-4) and (4-5) by their equivalents in terms of $\theta_{B}$ and $\theta_{D}$ (see, equations (3-5), (3-6), (3-17), (3-18) in chap.3) and after simplification we get:
$\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}=2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)-2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\left[\left(\alpha_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}\right) /\right.$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left(a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right)\right] \tag{4-6}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}=j 2\left(\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)+\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\left[\left(a_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}\right) /\right.\right.$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left.\left(a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right)\right\}\right\} \tag{4-7}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^3]In equations (4-6) and (4-7) there is an identical underifed term which simplifies as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{Tre}= & \left(a_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}\right) /\left(a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right) \\
= & \left\{\left[1-\left|a_{2}\right| G_{2} \exp \left(\Psi_{2}-\Psi_{1}\right) /\left|a_{1}\right| G_{1}\right] /\right. \\
& {\left.\left[1+\left|a_{2}\right| G_{2} \exp \left(\Psi_{2}-\Psi_{1}\right)\left\langle a_{1}\right| G_{1}\right]\right\} } \tag{4-8}
\end{align*}
$$

letting the phase difference $\Psi=\Psi_{2}-\Psi_{1}$, and $K=\left(\left|a_{2}\right| G_{2} /\left|a_{1}\right| G_{1}\right)$ sives:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Ter }=\left[\left(1-K^{2}\right)-j 2 K \sin (\Psi)\right] /\left[1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right] \tag{4-9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now substitute equation (4-9) into equations (4-6) and (4-7) and find the real and imaginary parts.
$\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}=2 \cos \left(\omega \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(\omega \theta_{D}\right)-2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\left(\left[\left(1-K^{2}\right)\right.\right.$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.-j 2 K \sin (\Psi) j /\left(1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right)\right\} \tag{4-10}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\operatorname{Real}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=2 \cos \left(\omega \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)-2 \sin \left(\omega \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(\omega \theta_{D}\right)\left[\left(1-K^{2}\right)\right.$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left./\left(1+\mathrm{K}^{2}+2 \mathrm{~K} \cos (\Psi)\right)\right] \tag{4-11}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\operatorname{Imag}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=4 K \sin (\Psi)\left[\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] /\left[1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right]$ (4-12)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}=j 2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)+j 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\left\{\left[\left(1-K^{2}\right)\right.\right. \\
&\left.-j 2 K \sin (\Psi)] /\left[1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right]\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\operatorname{real}\left(\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=4 K \sin (\Psi)\left[\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] /\left[1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right]$
$\operatorname{Imag}\left(\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)+2\left(1-K^{2}\right)\left[\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] /$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[1+K^{2}+2 K \cos (\Psi)\right] \tag{4-15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Carefuliy examining equations (4-12) and (4-14) it 18 seen that there is only one difference: in equation (4-12) we have sin $\left(w \theta_{B}\right)$ insted of $\cos \left(w \Theta_{B}\right)$ in (4-14). Dividing these two equations sives:
$\theta_{B}=(1 / w) \tan ^{-1}\left\{\operatorname{Imar}\left[\left(s_{1}+S_{3}\right) / s_{2}\right] / \operatorname{Real}\left[\left(s_{1}-s_{3}\right) / s_{2}\right]\right)$

From equation (4-16) it can be seen that the calculation of $\Theta_{B}$ is independent of the phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) between the direct signal and its conerent multipath except at $\Psi=0.0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ where the undetermined solution occurs $\left(\theta_{B}=\tan ^{-1}(\theta / \theta)\right.$, In case no noise exist).

Inspecting the second term of equation (4-11), it is seen to involve the multiplication of two sines for small angles $\left(\Theta_{B}, \theta_{D}\right)$ and the value of $\left(1-K^{2}\right)$ which is very small when the specular reflection coefficient of the smooth surface is large. Therefore, its effect on the equation is very small and (4-11) can be approximated by:

Real $\left[\left(S_{1}+S_{3}\right) / S_{2}\right]=2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)$

On substituting the value of $\theta_{B}$ from equation (4-16) in equation (4-17) the angle $\theta_{D}$ can be calculated easily and in turn $\Theta_{t} \& \Theta_{r}$ the ancles of arrival in the elevation plane for the direct $\operatorname{signal}$ and 1 ts coherent multipath.

$$
\theta_{D}=(1 / w) \cos ^{-1}\left\{\text { Real }\left[\left(s_{1}+S_{3}\right) / s_{2}\right] / 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right)\right\} \quad(4-18)
$$

When noise $1 s$ present the solutions are perturbed but if the signals can, as is normally the case, still be represented as the sum of two plane waves then the preceding solution continues to give the best maximum likelinood bearing estimates as will be shown from the simulation results in the coming section.

Now, let us investigate the solutions for the gymmetric and nonsymmetric cases separately according to their definitions in chapter 3. The phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) status indicator and the four-subapertures technique will be discussed too.

## 4-2.1 The symmetric case solution

In this case the target and its image are symmetricaliy located about the centre of the elevation pattern of the antenna and $\Theta_{B}$ is Known (for a broad-side beam from a vertical array $\theta_{B}=0$ ). To calculate $\theta_{D}$. subatitute the known value of $\theta_{B}$ in equation (4-18). When $\theta_{B}=0$ then $\theta_{t}=\theta_{D}$ and $\theta_{r}=-\theta_{D}$ and from equation (4-18) we get:

In comparing this simple equation, where $\theta_{D}$ can be easily calculated from a look-up table, with its equivalent of the 3SA-MLE method (in chap.3) in which a quadratic equation is required to be solved, one concludes that this method is simpler to implement in practical system and it is faster in calculation.

## 4-2.2 The nonsymmetric case solution

In this case $\theta_{B}$ is not known a priori unlike the symmetric case above and it has to be estimated from equation (4-16). It can be seen that the value of $\theta_{B}$ does not depend on the reflection coefficient of the surface except when $\rho_{g}=0.0$. Where the undetermined solution of ( $\theta / \theta$ ) occurs. Also. $\theta_{B}$ does not theoretically depend on the phase difference between the two signals (no noige being added to the signals) except when the phase difference is either zero or 180 degrees when the undetermined solution of ( $\theta / \theta$ ) occurs again. Besides, the calculation of $\Theta_{D}$ from (4-18) shows that 1t depends on $\theta_{B}$ and by looking at the second term of equation (4-11) one finds that $\Theta_{D}$ depends on the replection coefficient of the surface through $K$ and the estimate of $\theta_{D}$ becomes biased when the absolute value of $p_{g}$ sets very small. In comparing this simple nonsymmetric solution, which involves finding the values of $\theta_{B}$ and $\theta_{D}$ from a look-up
table, with its equivalent of the 3SA-MLE method which involves the solution of a quartic equation one easily concludes that this method is simpler to implement in a real system and it is paster in execution. The performance accuracy of this method (symmetric and nongymmetric cases) is found to be similar to that of the 3SA-MLE in general with some extra advantages as will be seen in the next section.

4-2.3 The phase difference status indicator

When the direct signal and its conerent multipath are in-phase $\left(\Psi=0^{\circ}\right)$ or anti-phase $\left(\Psi=189^{\circ}\right)$ at the centre of the array the accuracy in estimating the elevation angle is found to be poor (Just when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ for the symmetric case) as will be shown from the simulation results in the next section. Therefore, it is very useful to be able to decide if the two signals are actualiy in-phase or anti-phase in order to detect gross error in estimating the angle and if all possible to avoid it. A simple technique can be used from equation (4-14) by looking at the value of the real part of $\left[\left(S_{1}-S_{3}\right) / S_{2}\right]$. This value approaches zero whenever $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ (the same can be seen from equation (4-12) but its use is ilmited to the non-zero values of $\theta_{B}$ ). In practice, the absolute value of the numerator of equation (4-14) must be used only to avoid the effect of $\cos (\Psi)$ in the denominator, Where its change of sign leads to undesirable changes in the denominator overall value. The absolute value of the denominator is largest when $4=8^{\circ}$ (or multiples of $360^{\circ}$ ) and
smallest when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ (or $180^{\circ}$ + multiples of $360^{\circ}$ ), for a given values of $\rho_{g}, \theta_{B}$, and $\Theta_{D}$, while the absolute value of the numerator the lergest when $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ (or $90^{\circ}$ +multiples of $180^{\circ}$ ) and smallest whenever $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ (or multiples op 188゚).

This method will be used in a four-subaperture technique (4SA-TRM) similar to that discussed in chapter 3 and in a new mutual three and pour-subapertures technique (38,4SA-TRM) to get the optimum possible estimation accuracy.

4-2.4 The four-subapertures technigues
In the previous chapter we discussed the
four-subapertures technique to solve the in-phase and anti-phase estimation accuracy problem with the 3SA-MLE. This technique depends on estimating the phase dipference value ( $\Psi$ ) from the estimated angles of arrivals (see,section 3-3). The procedure was lengthy in processing and costly in terms of practical implementation, also it sacrifices some accuracy when $\Psi 18$ close to quadrature (close to zero for the symmetric case) by not using all of the available elements in the array. This method can be equally applied here by following the same steps shown in section 3-3. the oniy difference is that the estimation of $\theta_{t}$ and $\theta_{r}$ must be done by using 3SA-TRM insted 3SA-MLE.

In the above sub-section a new method is shown which allow us to choose the best aperture set (AP1 or AP2, see figure 3-4 in chap. 3) right from the start and before the
bearing estimation process begins. Figure 4-1 shows a block diagram of the four-subapertures processing technigue using the new in-phase and anti-phase procedure (4SA-TRM) which can be sumarized by the following steps:
a- Calculate the absolute values (sysi and sysz) of the numerators of the real parts of $\left(S_{1}-S_{3}\right) / S_{2}$ and $\left(S_{2}-S_{4}\right) / s_{3}$ respectively.
b- Compare sysi with sys2 and choose the aperture (AP1 or AP2) associated with the higher in value.
c- Continue estimation of the values of $\Theta_{t}$ and $\Theta_{r}$ by using the 3SA-TRM method with aamples input from the chosen aperture in step $b$.

The choice in step $b$ above leads to degredation in the performance of the symmetric case (for $\Psi<98^{\circ}$ ) where the best estimate is obtainable when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$. This price is needed in order to get better performance when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ by using this technique unless others are available. In fact another technique $1 s$ already discussed in chapter 3 which depends on the amplitudes comparison principles and it is not soing to be repeated here.

However, a new mutual three and four subapertures technique ( $384 S A-T R M$ ) is found to improve the performance of all types of four-subapertures discussed so far. This technique depends on dividing the linear array into three and four-subapertures in parallel with instantaneous sampling as shown in figure 4-2. The samples from the four-gubapertures arrangement are stored for posible use within the processing cycle if the in-phase or anti-phase condition occurs (fust


Fig. 4-1 : Block diagram represents the four-subapertures processing technique for the nonsymmetric and symmetric cases.

Linear array of 28 elements ○○○○○○ -


Fig. 4-2 : Block diagram represents the combined three and four subapertures processing technique for the nonsymmetric and symmetric cases.
anti-phase for the symmetric case). The absolute values of $S_{1}$. $S_{2}$, and $S_{3}$ from the three-Bubapertures arrangement (ingide the doted box $I$, not to be mixed with the ones inside the doted box II for the four-subapertures) are calculated and checked for possible in-phase or anti-phase occurrence (Just anti-phase for the symmetic case), depending on the fact that when the two received signals are in-phase at the array centre then $\left|s_{1}\right|<\left|s_{2}\right|>\left|s_{3}\right|$, and the opposite for anti-phase signals. If it is found that the two signals are not close to in-phase or anti-phase (just anti-phase for the symmetric case) then the solution will continue using the 3SA-TRM method with full array capacity as shown in figure 4-2. otherwise the stored samples from the four-subapertures arrangement will be enabled and the four-gubapertures processing technique (4SA-TRM) proceeds according to steps a, b. and c-listed earlier in this subsection and as shown inside the doted box II in figure 4-2.

In fact there is easier way to implement the $384 S A-T R M$ technique for the symmetric case solution by using amplitude comparison only. This can be done easily by replacing the dotted box II in figure 4-2 by the dotted one in figure 4-3 (keeping in mind that $S_{1}, S_{2}$, and $S_{3}$ in box $I$ are different from those in box II). The four-subapertures amplitudes comparison for the symmetric case is discussed in the previous chapter and not going to be repeated here. All the technigues using four-subapertures are equaliy applied to the $3 S A-M L E$ method discussed in chapter 3 and vis versa. The next section presenta the simulation results for the 3SA-TRM, 4SA-TRM, and 384SA-TRM with extended descussion.


[^4]
## 4-3 Simulation results and discussion


#### Abstract

All the simulations have been made using three (or four) subapertures of seven elements each, except for the mutual 3\&4SA-TRM technique where the number of elements in each subaperture for the three-gubapertures arrangement is nine insted of seven. Interelement spacing is $\lambda / 2$. Gaussian noige of zero mean and $\sigma^{2}$ variance was added to the gignals and one thousand trials were made to find the average errors In the angle estimation at each given phase difference. The rms error, $3 d B$ beamwidth, and $S / N$ were calculated as shown in chapter 3 (sec. 3-4).

The target model used in this simulation is Swerling case 5 type (SW.5), and for comparison purposes Swerling case 2 (SW.2) target, type is used too. A noisy signal is generated for the $3 S A-T R M$ and 4SA-TRM according to the target models above and in the same way used for the 3SA-MLE and 4SA-MLE shown in chapter 3. The solutions were computed for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases for all the techniques discussed so far in this chapter. The phase difference $(\Psi)$ is always taken to be multiples of 22.5 degrees in the range from $\sigma^{\circ}$ to $180^{\circ}$. A nistogram of simulation results is used to demonstrate the performance of the $3 S A-T R M$ and $4 S A-T R M$ at some cases, where the rms angle-of-arrival (+beamwidth) is divided into 20 zones of accuracy, from 0.0-0.05. .......0.9-0.95. >0.95.


4-3.1 The symmetric cage solution


#### Abstract

Figure 4-4 shows the simulation results of the 3SA-TRM for a target with $\Theta_{B}=0$, $S / N=3 \varnothing$ dB. $\rho_{s}=0.9$ and $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125$ BW. using $s W .5$ target type. For comparison the corresponding result is shown for sW. 2 target $\therefore$ type only for the case $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$. In comparing the solution using SW. 5 target: type to that using sw. 2 . we find that the first 18 much more accurate than the gecond over all values of $\Psi$ with average rms angle-of-arrival error enhancement of 0.06 . The rms error 18 large when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ and very small when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$, also it increases when $\theta_{D}$ decreaseg. In comparing these curves with their correspondents in the 3SA-MLE in figure $3-8$ (chap. 3) one concludes that the estimation accuracy obtainable is very much alike over all values of $\Psi$ and $\Theta_{D}$ with very small deviations when $\Psi$ is close to the antiphase condition (this is more obvious for sW. 2 target'; type). Besides, figure 4-5 shows a histogram of simulation results for the symmetric $3 S A-T R M$ for the above two target's types, when $\Theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{g}}=0.9$. $\Psi=90$ degrees, where the rms error of the sw. 5 type is shown to be within the range $0.0-0.05$ for $78 \%$ of the time and $0.05-0.1$ for $18 \%$ while for the second target type it drops to $63 \%$, and $31 \%$ respectively. In compering these resuits with their correspondents in figure 3-11 (chap.3) one can see that the performance is very much the same for the first while some improvement in accuracy is shown for the second. Figure 4-6 presents the $S / N$ performance for SW. 5




Figure 4-4 :RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, P_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, SW. 2 target's type is shown


RMS angle-of-arrival error (beamwidth)

Figur 4-5 :Histogram shows the performance of the symmetric 3SA-TRM for Swerling cases 2 and 5 target types $\Theta_{B}=0 . \Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9, \Psi=90^{\circ}$.
target's type with $\theta_{B}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9$. and $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30.20 .10$ dB. In general, one concludes that the rms error increages as the $S / N$ decreases. In comparing these curves with those of figure 3-9 (chap. 3) one can see fimilar accuracy over all values of $\Psi$ except when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where some deviations occurs. Figure 4-7 presents the performance with different values of $\rho_{g}$ where $\theta_{B}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.25$ BW. $S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}$. and $\rho_{g}=0.9 .0 .5 .0 .1$. In general, when $\rho_{s}$ decreases the performance getg better when the absolute value of $\Psi$ is close to the out of phase case (generally when $\Psi>90^{\circ}$, depends on $\rho_{B}$ ) and $a$ iftile worse elsewhere. The improvement at $\Psi=188^{\circ}$ is very substantial where the rms error drops from 0.26 to just 0.065 when $\rho_{s}$ changes from 0.9 to 0.1. In comparing these curves with those in figure 3-10 (chap.3) one can see very much similar results. The main reason beyond this improvement when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$. is the same in both methods (3SA-TRM, 3SA-MLE) and is not going to be repeated here (see sec.3-4.1 in chap.3).

Before discussing the new four-subepertures method results, let us examine the case. of the imaginary angle occurrence (1.e when $\theta_{t}=\theta_{r}$ ) and the accuracy in estimating the phase difference from the estimated angles of arrival of the target and its conerent multipath. Table 4-1 shows computer simulation results for the frequency of occurrences of the imaginary angle (Im-ang) and when the absolute error of the estimated value of $\Psi$ is greater than a given value (assumed here to be $10^{\circ}$ ) from its true one (ph-div). in 1000 trials for $\theta_{B}=0 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$ and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$ for SW. 5 target's type (and SW. 2 target's type Just at


Figure 4-6 :RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \Theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$


Figure 4-7 :RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \Theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

Table 4-1 The imaginary angle and erroneous estimated phase difference ( $>10^{\circ}$ deviation from the true value) occurrences in the symmetric $3 S A-T R M$ for $\quad \Theta_{B}=0 . \quad S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \quad \rho_{B}=0.9$. $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125 \mathrm{BW}$, for 1000 trials at each phase shown. For comparison the results for SW. 2 target's type is shown when $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

| Phase | 0.5 BW |  | 0.25 BW |  |  |  | 0.125 BW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Im-ang.$\text { SW. } 5$ | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 | IM-ang |  | Ph-div. |  | IM-ang.$\text { sw. } 5$ | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 |
|  |  |  | SW. 5 | SW. 2 | SW. 5 | SW. 2 |  |  |
| 0.0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 38 | 9 | 203 | 120 | 212 |
| 22.5 | $\theta$ | 8 | 0 | 40 | 36 | 258 | 132 | 425 |
| 45.0 | 0 | $\varnothing$ | 1 | 41 | 120 | 373 | 147 | 635 |
| 67.5 | $\square$ | 1 | 1 | 58 | 227 | 445 | 179 | 715 |
| 90.0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 67 | 310 | 525 | 217 | 787 |
| 112.5 | 0 | 5 | 4 | 86 | 366 | 605 | 253 | 816 |
| 135.0 | 0 | 5 | 37 | 148 | 386 | 616 | 287 | 818 |
| 157.5 | 0 | 6 | 156 | 227 | 402 | 641 | 375 | 822 |
| 180.0 | 187 | 0 | 284 | 239 | 31 | 235 | 339 | 164 |

$\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW for comparison). The imaginary angle occurrence 1s zero over all values of $\Psi$ when $\theta_{D}=0.5$ BW except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where it occurs 107 times which might explains the bad performance at this point. When $\theta_{D}$ decreases the Im-ang occurrence increages over all values of $\Psi$ leading to degredation in the angle estimation accuracy as shown in figure 4-4. The estimated value of $\Psi$ is worst when the two signals are close to phase opposition as can be seen from the table (mainly because of the decrease in the $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}$ ) with one exception at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where the imaginary angle occurs very frequently. The reason behind this exception is that when an imaginary angle occurg a test is carried out to find whether the two signals are close to in-phase or anti-phase conditions depending on the fact that whenever the two signals are anti-phase at the centre of the array then $\left|s_{3}\right|>\left|s_{2}\right|<\left|s_{1}\right|$ and the opposite occurs when the two signals are in phase agreement at the arras's centre. Thus, depending on the above conditions the value of $\Psi 18$ set to either $0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ Whenever the imaginary angle occurs leading to nigh accuracy In estimating the value of $\Psi$ when the two signals are anti-phase in particular and elsewhere in general. The frequency of occurrence of ph-div increases as $\theta_{D}$ decreases as can be seen from the table. In comparing with the sW. 2 target ? type for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ one concludes that the frequency of occurrences of the imaginary angle and the erroneous values of the estimated $\Psi$ is much higher for the second type which explains the increase in the rms error shown in figure 4-5. where a histogram 1s shown for both types. In comparing
these results with those in table $3-2$ (chap. 3) one finds that the imaginary angle occurrences using this method is sifghtiy less than that of using the $3 S A-M L E$ except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where $1 t$ becomes much less. The phase estimation is very much alike in both methods over all values of $\theta_{D}$ and $\Psi$. Thus, one concludes that using the four-subapertures technigues discussed in chapter 3 (by following the same steps in figure 3-5 after replacing the 3SA-MLE by 3SA-TRM) will leads to very much similar results and is not going to be repeated here with the new trigonometric solution. In conclusion, the bigger the angular seperation, and the smaller the phage difference between the two targets, the better the accuracy in estimating the value of $\Psi$, and the less the occurrence of imaginary angles.

According to the discussion in section 4-2 above and the block diagram in figure $4-1$ a computer simulation is carried out to determine the effectiveness of the $4 S A-T R M$ in improving the performance of the symmetric case of the 3Sh-TRM when the two targets are in (or close to) phase opposition. Figure $4-8$ shows the simulation results of the symmetric 4SA-TRM for $\theta_{B}=0$. $\rho_{B}=0.9$, $S / N=30$ dB, and $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125 \mathrm{BW}$, using SW. 5 target type. For comparison 3SA-TRM is shown only for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ ( 27 elements are used ingted of 28 for the $4 S A-T R M$ to be abie to divide into three-equal-subapertures). In comparing each curve with its correspondent in figure 4-4, keeping in mind that we use just $3 / 4$ of the total array's elements in the four-suabapertures method, while the rms error is normalized to 3dB beamwidth of


Figure 4-8:RMS error of symmetric 4SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, P_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-TRM is shown for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
the whole array, one can see a bic reduction in the rms exror when $\Psi 18$ close to $180^{\circ}$ in general and in particular the accuracy increases sharply when $\theta_{D}$ is large. A little degredation at small values of $\Psi$ is shown to be mainly related to the normalization method and the lower $S / N$ per subaperture (1.2 dB less), and the comparison method used where the best solution is assumed to be at phase quadrature and not at zero phase where the actual best solution occurs (see, sec. 4-2.3). In comparing the result of 3 ) $A-T R M$ (using 27 elements) with its correspondent 4SA-TRM ones (using 28 elements) for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ as shown on the game figure. a big improvement is shown when $\Psi 1$ close to anti-phase condition and a little decredation elsewhere. Rms error increases by 0.02 at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and 18 worst at $\Psi=67.5^{\circ}$ where it increases by 0.031. The main reason for this degredation is the higher $S / N$ per subaperture for the $3 S A-T R M$ case ( $\sim 1$ dB) in comparison with the 4SA-TRM ones and the used comparison method. By comparing these results with those in figure 3-12 (chap.3) one can aee that the performance of the 3SA-MLE 18 slightly better for all values of $\Psi$ except when $\Theta_{D}=0.125 \mathrm{BW}$ where this method shows alightiy higher accuracy when $\Psi>90^{\circ}$ in general. Figure $4-9$ shows a histogram results for $\Theta_{D}=0.25$ BW, $\rho_{B}=0.9 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0$, and $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ for the $35 A-M L E$ and the 4SA-TRM, where the rms error (tbeamwidth) appears to be within the range $0-0.1$ for $55 \%$ of the time for the $4 S A-T R M$. while it drops to $20 \%$ for the $3 S A-T R M$. Also. one can see the high occurrence of imaginary and erroneous angles ( $44 \%$ of the time) for the 3SA-TRM in comparison with that of the


RMS angle-of-arrival error (beamwidth)

Figur 4-9 : Histogram shows the performance of the symmetric 3SA-TRM and 4SA-TRM for Swerling case 5 target type $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, 5 / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9, \Psi=180^{\circ}$.

4SA-TRM ones ( $20 \%$ of the times).
In the above four-subapertures technique we used the comparison procedure, between sysi and sys2. to decide which set olves the best angle estimation. In fact the amplitude comparison technique discussed in the previous chapter is more accurate and efficient for the symmetric case solution. However it is still not efficient enough for some accuracy is lost when the two signals are far from being antiphase, by not being able to use all the available elements of the array. As discussed in section 4-2.4 a new 3\&4SA-TRM technique is possible which makes optimum solution obtainable over all values of $\Psi$ by making use of the full array whenever possible. Figure $4-10$ shows simulation results for the gymmetric $3 \& 4 S A-T R M$ according to the block diagram in figure 4-2 (in the dotted box $I$, Just the second comparison inquality must be used which represent the anti-phase condition) for $\theta_{B}=0 . \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$. and $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$, uging sW. 5 target's type. For comparison $3 S A-T R M$ performance 18 shown only for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}(27$ elements are used ingted of 28). In comparing each curve with its correspondent in figure 4-8. where the 4SA-TRM technique is used only, one can see that the rms error is the same when $\Psi$ close to anti-phase condition (4SA-TRM tech. mainly chosen) while a big improvement occurs for low values of $\Psi$ where the choice of the 3SA-TRM is mainly occurs. By comparing the 3SA-TRM and the $384 S A-T R M$ performance for $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW. one can see a negligible variation in accuracy when the value of $\Psi$ is far from the anti-phase condition (mainly related to the misaing


Figure 4-10 :RMS error of symmetric 384 SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-TRM is shown for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
element) and a great improvement in accuracy for the 384SA-TRM over the $3 S A-T R M$ when $\Psi 18$ close to 180 degrees. Thus, by using this method one always can set the best possible solution in estimating the targets positions. However another 384SA-TRM technique using a fully amplitude comparison procedure 18 discussed in section 4-2.4, where its block diagram can be easily obtained by replacing the doted box II in figure 4-2 by the one in figure 4-3. Simulation results for this technique are shown in figure $4-11$ for $\Theta_{B}=0$, $S / N=30 \quad d B, \rho_{B}=0.9, \theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125$ BW. For comparison the symmetric $3 S A-T R M$ results are shown for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ only. In comparing each curve with its correspondent in figure 4-10 one can see identical performance for both technigues over all values of $\Psi$ and $\Theta_{D}$.

In conclusion, by using the $384 S A-T R M$ technique an optimum use of the array's elements can be used by having the ability to choose between three or four subapertures performance according to the status of the phase difference between the two received signals. The same can be easily applied to the 3SA-MLE discussed in chap. 3 and similar results are expected.

## 4-3.2 The nonsymmetric case solution

## Figure 4-12 shows the simulation results of the 3SA-TRM

for a target with $\theta_{B}=0 . \quad \rho_{8}=0.9, \quad S / N=30$ and $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125$ BW, using sW. 5 target. type (for comparison the corresponding results is shown for the sW. 2


Figure 4-11 :RMS error of symmetric 3\&4SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{B}=0.0, S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, P_{S}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-TRM is shown for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 B W$.
target's type only when $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ ). In comparing the solutions, one finds that the rms error increases as $\theta_{D}$ decreases, and the worst estimation occurs when the two sources are in-phase or anti-phase ( $\Psi=\varnothing^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ ) or close to any of them as can be seen from the curves. The best accuracy is obtained when the two sources are in phase quadrature for all values of $\theta_{D}$, except when $\theta_{D}=0.125 \mathrm{BW}$ where the optimum accuracy is obtained at $\Psi=112^{\circ}$. The accuracy obtained when $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ for the SW .5 target type is much nigher than that for the sw. 2 target type, where the rms error increases by 0.07 for the second at $\Psi=90$. In comparing these curves with their correspondents in the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE in figure $3-15$ (chap. 3) one can see that this method shows better performance when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$, while the 3SA-MLE 18 better when $\Psi=8^{\circ}$. and both methods shows the same accuracy when $\Psi$ is close to quadrature. This method shows better accuracy with SW. 2 target's type over all values of $\Psi$ except at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ where the 3SA-MLE 18 better. Figur 4-13 shows the $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}$ performance of the 3 SA A TRM for $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0$. $\theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$. $\rho_{s}=0.9$, and $S / N=30,20,10 \mathrm{~dB}$, where the rms error 18 shown to increase as the $S / N$ decreases over all values of $\Psi$. In comparing these curves with the correspondents of the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE in figure 3-16 (chap. 3) one concludes that this method works better with low $S / N$ (but not when $\Psi=\varnothing^{\circ}$ or $\left.180^{\circ}\right)$. where the rms error reduction ranges to 0.055 at $S / N=10$ dB and $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ as can be seen from the curves. Figure 4-14 presents the performance of the 3SA-TRM for different values of the specular reflection coefficient for $\theta_{B}=0$.


Figure 4-12 :RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function
of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, P_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison,

SW. 2 target's type is shown


Figure 4-13:RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for

$$
\Theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \Theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9
$$



Figure 4-14 :RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{B}=0.0, \Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$
$\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and $\rho_{\mathrm{g}}=0.9,0.5,0.1$. In general, when $\rho_{s}$ decreases the rms error increases especially when $\rho_{s}$ is very small (0.1). In comparing these curves with the correspondents of the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE in figure 3-17 (chap.3) one can see that both methods shows bad performance in general when $\rho_{B}$ is small and this method is worse when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$. Further investigations show the method works silghtiy better than the $3 S A-M L E$ method when $\theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}$. Figure 4-15 shows the performance of the nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM with different values of the bisecting angle (the non symmetry performance), for $\theta_{D}=0.5$ BW, $S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$, and $\theta_{B}=0.0,0.25,0.5 \mathrm{BW}$. In comparing with the 3SA-MLE (the solid line) we see that the $3 S A-M L E$ method fails when $\theta_{B}=0.34 \mathrm{BW}$ while this method still works with very good accuracy untill $\theta_{B}=0.5$ BW. Further studies did show that this algorithm (3SA-TRM) will continue to work until one of the received signals reaches the subaperture beam pattern at point below the 3 dB point, while the 3SA-MLE method works with very good accuracy until $\theta_{B}=\varnothing .3 \mathrm{BW}$.

As we have seen from the results above, the performance of the nonsymmetric $3 S A-T R M 18$ very poor when the target and its coherent multipath are in-phase or anti-phase. In section 4-2.4 a new 4SA-TRM method is introduced to solve this problem and improve the performance in these two regions. Before showing the simulation results for this method we examine the case of the imaginary angle occurrence and the accuracy obtained in estimating the phase difference $\Psi$ from the estimated angles of arrival of the two sources.


Figure 4-15:RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{D}=0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \rho_{S}=0.9, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$. For comparison the performance of the 3SA-MLE is shown

Table 4-2 shows computer simulation results for the frequency of occurrences of the imaginary angle (Im-ang) and when the absolute error of the estimated value of $\Psi 1 s$ greater than a given value (taken here to be 10) from 1ts true one (ph-div), for $\theta_{B}=0, S / N=30$ dB , $\rho_{B}=0.9$, and $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125$ BW for SW. 5 taxget'B type (and $S W .2$ target's type fust when $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW for comparison). The imaginary angle occurrence is zero over all values of $\Psi$ when $\Theta_{D}=6.5 \mathrm{BW}$. except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ and $\theta^{\circ}$ where it occurs 128 and 378 times out of $19 \theta \theta$ respectively, which might explain the bad performance at these two points. When $\theta_{D}$ decreases the Imaginary angle occurrence increases over all values of $\Psi$ as can be seen from the table. The estimated value of $\Psi$ is the worgt when the two sources are in phase agreament, while it is very accurate when they are in phase opposition for $\theta_{D}=0.5$ BW as can be seen from table 4-2. The reason behind this high accuracy (when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ ) is that when an imaginary angle occurg a test is carried out to find whether the two signals are close to in-phase or anti-phase conditions depending on the same facts explained in chapter 3 (section 3-4.1). The frequency of occurrence of the imaginary angle and the erroneous values of the estimated $\Psi$ for the sw. 2 target type 18 higher than that for sW. 5 type in general as can be seen Prom the table for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$. In comparing these results with those of the nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE in table 3-3 (chap.3) one can see similar results with some exception at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$ which can be read on the tables. Thus, from the above discussion one concludes that the phase comparison

Table 4-2 The imaginary angle and erroneous estimated phase difference ( $>10^{\circ}$ deviation from the true value) occurrences in the nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM for $\theta_{B}=0, \quad S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \quad \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9$. $\theta_{D}=0.5 .0 .25 .0 .125 \mathrm{BW}$. for $10 \varnothing \theta$ trials at each phase shown. For comparison the results for $S W .2$ target's type is shown when $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$.

| Phase | 0.5 BW |  | 0.25 BW |  |  |  | 0. 125 BW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $I m-a n g$$\text { SW. } 5$ | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 | IM-ang |  | Ph-div. |  | IM-ang. <br> SW. 5 | Ph-div. <br> SW. 5 |
|  |  |  | SW. 5 | SW. 2 | SW. 5 | SW. 2 |  |  |
| 0.0 | 378 | 258 | 613 | 623 | 83 | 164 | 713 | 147 |
| 22.5 | 0 | 3 | 55 | 208 | 326 | 537 | 676 | 873 |
| 45.8 | 0 | $\theta$ | 2 | 182 | 208 | 508 | 479 | 835 |
| 67.5 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 94 | 263 | 493 | 371 | 809 |
| 90.0 | $\emptyset$ | 1 | 1 | 87 | 326 | 533 | 335 | 816 |
| 112.5 | 0 | 3 | 5 | 99 | 367 | 605 | 313 | 842 |
| 135.6 | 0 | 6 | 39 | 158 | 392 | 615 | 323 | 827 |
| 157.5 | 0 | 6 | 162 | 228 | 405 | 641 | 391 | 833 |
| 180.0 | 128 | 0 | 324 | 286 | 28 | 263 | 425 | 191 |

four-subapertures technique discuused in chapter 3 can be equaliy applied here by following the gteps shown in figure 3-6 and replacing the $3 S A-M L E$ by $3 S A-T R M$. Similar results are expected as long as the three-subapertures performance of both methods $1 s$ very much the same as we have already seen from comparing so far.

According to the block diagram in figure 4-1 a computer simulation is carried out to express the effectiveness of the new 4SA-TRM method (by comparing sysi with sys2) to improve the nonsymmetric case of the $3 S A-T R M$ performance when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or 180. Figure $4-16$ shows these results for $\Theta_{B}=0$. $S / N=36 d B$. $\rho_{g}=0.9$. $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25,0.125$ BW, using SW. 5 target type. For comparison 3SA-TRM is shown only for $\theta_{D}=0.25$ BW (27 elements are used insted of 28). By comparing each curve with its correspondent in figure 4-12 (keeping in mind that we use Just $3 / 4$ of the total elements of the array for the 4SA-MLE method. while the rms error is normalized to the 3 dB beamwidth of the whole array) one can see a large reduction In the rms error for $\theta_{D}=0.5,0.25$. $B W$ when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ (or close) and only a very small increase when $\Psi$ is close to quadrature. This is mainiy related to smaller $S / N$ per subaperture. the 3 dB beamwidth normalization, and the deviation of the new chosen value of $\Psi$ from the quadrature in terms of the new comparing method between sysi and sys2 and 1ts accuracy. In comparing the $4 S A-T R M$ with the $3 S A-T R M$ ( 27 elements) for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ a big improvement can be seen when the phase difference between the two sources is close to or $180^{\circ}$ and a little degredation when it is close to quadrature


Figure 4-16:RMS error of nonsymmetric 4SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\Theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, $3 S A-T R M$ is shown for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
for the same reason explained above. Figure 4-17 shows a h1stogram of results for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$. and $\Psi=0^{\circ}, 180^{\circ}$ for the $3 S A-T R M$ and $4 S A-T R M$ methods, where the rms error (+beamwidth) for the first is within the range $0-0.1$ for $38 \%$ of the time when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and $20 \%$ when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$, while it rises to $66 \%$ and $48 \%$ for the second respectively. Thus one can conclude that the new four-subapertures method for solving the in-phase and anti-phase problem by comparing between sysi and syb2 (fust the anti-phase for the symmetric case) is very effective, and it reduces the needed work load and hardware in comparison with the phase comparison four-subapertures technique discussed in chapter 3 (the 4SA-MLE) but it $1 s$ slightly worse for the symmetric case and better for the nonsymmetric one.
Whatever improvement obtained by using the
four-subapertures techniques (4SA-TRM) for the in-phase and anti-phase signal conditions, further improvement is obtainable by using the nonsymmetric 3\&4SA-TRM method. Figure 4-2 shows the block diagram of this method and figure 4-18 shows the simulation results accordingly for $\Theta_{B}=\varnothing$. $S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9 . \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.5 .0 .25$. 0.125 BW (the 3SA-TRM method 1s shown using 27 elements on the same figure for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ only for comparison purposes). In comparing these curves with those of the 4SA-TRM in figure 4-16 one can see a great Improvement in performance when $\Psi$ is close to the quadrature condition $\left(30^{\circ}<\Psi<140^{\circ}\right)$ and al80 for $\Theta_{D}=0.125 \mathrm{BW}$ in particular over all values of $\Psi$ except at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$. Also, by comparing the $3 S A-T R M$ and $3 \& 4 S A-T R M$ for $\Theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ on figure 4-18 one can see that the two curves are very gimilar with


RMS angle-of-arrival error (beamwidth)

Figur 4-17:Histogram shows the performance of the nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM and 4SA-TRM for Swerling case 5 target type $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \quad \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.9$. (a)- for $\psi=0.0^{\circ}$. (b) - for $\psi=180^{\text {s. }}$


Figure 4-18:RMS error of nonsymmetric $3 \& 4$ SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, S / N=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{S}}=0.9$. For comparison, 3SA-TRM is shown for $\theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}$
negilgible differences (mainly related to the misaing element, 27 instead of 28) over all values of $\Psi$ except when $30^{\circ}>\Psi>140^{\circ}$, and a ble improvement occurs when $30^{\circ}>\Psi>140^{\circ}$. The main reason beyond this improvement is as explained for the symmetric case of the $384 S A-T R M$ above.

The lessons learned from this chapter can be summarised by the following points:
a- this trigonometric solution (3SA-TRM) gives very much the same rasulta obtained by the 3SA-MLE for both symmetric and nonsymmetric cases.
b- The 3SA-TRM is faster in processing and simpler to implement in a practical system.
c- The new four-Bubapertures technique is simpler than the one presented in chapter 3 and saves much time in processing while it gives similar results with few exceptions.
d- The new 3\&4SA-TRM technique for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases is the most promising technique for reducing the rms error in estimating the angles very significantly at $\Psi \equiv 0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ and preserving the accuracy obtainable by using $3 S A-T R M$ elsewhere.
e- The 3\&4SA-TRM amplitude comparison technique for the symmetric case is the most efficient one of all presented techniques and very viable for practical implementation.

P- All the techniques used with the new method to solve the in-phase and anti-phase problems are applicable to the method mentioned in chapter 3 and vise-versa.

## Chapter 5

## The Maximum Entropy Method And <br> Monobulaeradar

## 5-1 Introduction


#### Abstract

Modern spectral estimation techniques for time-series as documented by Childers $[5-1]$, and the maximum entropy method (MEM) in particular, have recently received much attention in the literature because of their ability to resolve closely-spaced spectral elements. The MEM was first suggested by Burg [5-2] and later extensively investigated and discussed in many papers and text books [5-3,5-4,5-5]. Van de Bos [5-6] shows that the MEM 1s equivalent to least-gquares fitting of an all-pole (autoregressive) model to the available data. Haykin and Kesier [5-7] show the complex form of the MEM and Andersen [5-8] gives a fast and simple procedure to calculate the filter coefficients of equal spaced data according to the Burg method in [5-1]. A discussion about how to choose the order of the pilter and its effect on the resulting performance is shown in Kay et al. [5-9] and Childers [5-1]. McDonough [5-10] shows that the MEM spectral analysis uged in the processing of time-series data is equally applicable to the wavenumber


analysis of signals received by a spatially distributed IInear array of sensors. Kesler and Haykin [5-11] show that the MEM provides a rather useful method for obtaining a short-term estimate of the spectral density of radar clutter. The advantages and disadvantages of this method are investigated in the above references and many others and will not be discusied here again.

In seneral, time-series estimation techniques are only applicable when the underiying proces is stationary. If it 1s not, such as in the case of a low-flying target over a smooth surface where the direct and reflected signals are conerent, then the regulting wavenumber spectral estimate will not be meaningful unless the two signals are in phase guadrature [5-12]. Because this is not the case one can conclude that these sorts of algorithms are inappropriate for solving such problems. However Evans [5-13. 5-14] shows results from a field test on the performance of the MEM, where it worked very well over an irregular surface, but he did not discuss the scale of irregularities.

The purpose of this chapter is to introduce the MEM in seneral and to show its performance in solving the specular multipath problem by using the same three-subapertures inear array presented in the previous two chapters. Also, a brief look at the principles and performance of the phase-comparison monopulse radar will be given. The effect of the gurface roughness on the performances of the three-subapertures MLE, TRM, MEM, and the phase-comparison monopulse radar will be discussed and compared in chapter 6.

## 5-2 The maximum entropy formulation


#### Abstract

The MEM spectrum estimate for wavenumber spectral estimation can be siven by the following equation \{5-4\}.


$$
\begin{equation*}
P(\theta)=\sigma_{w}^{2} /\left|1+\sum_{m=1}^{M} c_{M, m} z^{-m}\right|^{2} \tag{5-1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, $Z=\exp \left(j 2 \Pi d \sin (\theta) / \lambda, C_{M, m} 1 s\right.$ the m-th parameter of the all-pole filter, Mis the numbers of poles. $\sigma_{\mathcal{W}}^{2}$ is the variance of the white noise input, $p(\theta)$ is the power density In the angular direction $\theta$, and $d$ is the subaperture spacing as. shown in figure 3-1 (in chap. 3), or the interelement gpacing in case that individual elements are considered. Using the three subapertures technique mentioned in the previous two chapters, the above equation can be rewritten as follows for the two pole-filter case.

$$
\begin{equation*}
P(\theta)=\sigma_{w}^{2} /\left|1+c_{2,1} z^{-1} c_{2,2} z^{-2}\right|^{2} \tag{5-2}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are two practical methods for locating the peak position in the spectrum. The pirst is by calculating the roots of the characteristic equation of the prediction error filter (the quadrature equation in the denominator of the equation above for the three subaperture case), then finding the angles of the roots which correspond to each incident plane waves. This method becomes very lengthy and difficult to solve when the number of poles is high. The other method is to find the wavenumber spectrum and search for its peaks.

In the simulation performed for this study of a low-fiying target over asmooth surface (rough surface in the next chapter), the second method was chosen, since it is more likely to be used in practical system.

5-2.1 Burg method [5-7]

To use the MEM spectral estimate above we need a procedure to estimate its parameters $\quad \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{M}, 1}$, $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{M}, 2}$, ...... $C_{M, M}$ ) and there are several procedures to estimate these from $N$ data samples [5-5,5-9]. The most popular procedure is known as the Burg method. This method depends on minimizing the sum of the forward and backward prediction error power of an ali-pole filter (see figure 5-i), subject to the constraint that all the parametera (from 1 to M) satisfy the Levinson recursion (5-10) to ensure the stability of the filter (the poles inside the unit circie) [5-9].

Assuming a wide sense stationary process and starting with $M=0$, then the power $P_{1}$ is the autocorrelation for zero lag, and given by.

$$
\begin{equation*}
p_{1}=(1 / N) \sum_{i=1}^{N}\left|s_{1}\right|^{2} \tag{5-3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $S_{1}$ is the $1-t h$ sample from the 1 -th element (or subaperture) and $N$ is the total number of elements or subapertures. For $M=1$, then the length of the prediction error filter is two and the error power $P_{2}$ defined by the average sum of the resulting powers of the forward and


Figure 5-1:The forward and backward filtering of $N$ samples from N subarray or N elements array.
backwerd filtering $\left(P_{2}^{\prime}\right.$, and $P_{2}^{\prime \prime}$ ) respectively.

$$
\begin{align*}
& p_{2}=(1 / 2)\left(p_{2}^{\prime}+p_{2}^{\prime \prime}\right)  \tag{5-4}\\
& p_{2}^{\prime}=[1 /(N-1)] \sum_{i=1}^{N-1}\left|s_{1+1}+C_{11}^{*} s_{1}\right|^{2}  \tag{5-6}\\
& p_{2}^{\prime \prime}=[1 /(N-1)] \sum_{i=1}^{N-1}\left|s_{1}+C_{11}^{*} s_{1+1}\right|^{2} \tag{5-7}
\end{align*}
$$

If the mean power $P_{2}$ is minimised by taking its partial derivative with respect to $C_{11}$ and setting it to zero. $\left(\partial P_{2} / \partial c_{11}\right)=0$. then the power at the output is minimized whenever $C_{11}$ takes the following value.

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{11}=\frac{-\sum_{i=1}^{N-1} s_{1} s_{i+1}}{\sum_{i=1}^{N-1}\left(\left|s_{1}\right|^{2}+\left|s_{i+1}\right|^{2}\right)} \tag{5-8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the real value of $p_{2}$ is given by the following. from its equivalent correlation matrix.

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{2}=\left(1-\left|c_{11}\right|^{2}\right) P_{1} \tag{5-9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The above procedure can be extended to higher order filters, where the parameter $C_{M m}$ for afiler of order $M+1$ can be defined by the following seneral equation:
where, $m=1,2, \ldots . ., M$.
and the corresponding output power is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{M+1}=P_{M}\left(1-\left|C_{M M}\right|^{2}\right) \tag{5-11}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the above equation and since $C_{M M}<1$, one can conclude that $0 . B \leqslant P_{M+1} \leqslant P_{M}$. which means that the error decreases by increasing the order of the filter. This is controlled by many factors which compromise between high resolution and fewer spurious peaks and there are many approaches and suggestions in the literature for estimating the filter order. One intuitive approach is to increase the order until the calculated power of the prediction error reaches minimum. Ulrych et. al. in [5-9] suggested an order choice within the range $N / 3$ to $N / 2$ for the case of a short data sequence. For the three-subapertures arrangement of a ilnear array with two incident plane waves (direct and reflected signals) the minimum numbers of poles must be two which represent the maximum order of the filter.

## 5-3 The phase-comparison monopulse

Various methods of precision single target tracking have been developed and used in the past. These methods are mainly based on either simultaneous or sequential lobing
techniques which require a minimum number of echo pulses (at least thres pulses) to extract the error signals which are normally used to actuate a servo-control system to position the antenna. During the measurement time, the amplitudes of the received echos must stay constant (non-fiuctuatins amplitude) otherwise a severe degredation in the tracking accuracy might occur $[5-15,5-16]$.

The amplitude pluctuations of the received echo pulaea wili have no effect on the accuracy of the tracking system if the angular measurement procedure depends on the basis of extracting the error signals from one pulse rather than many. One of the most popular method is monopulse tracking which is mainly divided into the following two types: first, the amplitude-comparison monopulse which employs two overlapping antenna beams to obtain the angular error signal in one plane, and the second 1s the phase-comparison monopulse (or interferometer radar) which employs two parallel antenna beams to obtain the signal error in one plane (in both cases the minimum number of beams required for elevation and azimuth angle tracking are three, but normally four beams are used). Also, the phase and amplitude comparison monopulse features can be used fointly in one system to provide angular tracking in azimuth and elevation by using only two beams rather than minimum of three required for each type individualy [5-15].

The failure of the monopulse radar in tracking a low-flying target over a smooth surface is very widely studied in the literature (see chapter i). In a comparison
study between phase and amplitude procesgors for amplitude monopulse syatems. Sinsky and Lew [5-17] have ahown that when the $S / N$ is high the obtainable performance accuracies are comparable for both processors except for target angles very close to boresight where the second outperforms the first by 3 dB signal to noise ratio equivalent. Also they expect the phase processor monopulse to operate with higher accuracy than the amplitude processor one in a noncoherent multipath environment.

In figure 5-2 the geometry of two plane waves (1.e direct signal and its coherent multipath) and two subapertures of a linear array are shown, where the separation between the centres of the two subapertures and the dibtance from the array centre to the target are given by d and $R$ respectively. (R>>d). The complex signal outputs of the two subapertures can be given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{1}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(j z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left(j z_{2} / 2\right)+n_{1} \tag{5-12}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{2}=a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left(-j Z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{2} \quad G_{2} \exp \left(-j z_{2} / 2\right)+n_{2} \tag{5-13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the description of each term in the above two equations is siven in chapter 3. The phase reference is taken at the midde of the array. However, when the target is high over the surface $1 . e$ the multipath components are zero in the above two equations, then the change in the phase of the signal (the phase lag) is given by $\Delta P L=Z_{1}$ or by $1 t s$ equivalent from [5-15]:


Figure 5-2 :The geometery of two plane waves and two-subapertures of a linear array.

```
\DeltaPL=2\pid sin}(\mp@subsup{0}{t}{})/
```

and the elevation angle is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{t}=8 \ln ^{-1}[\Delta P L \quad \lambda /(2 H d)] \tag{5-15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the Gausian noise components are excluded from the calculations above. For small values of the elevation angle $\sin \left(\theta_{t}\right)=\theta_{t}$.

When specular multipath exists the above calculation of the elevation ancle will be disturbed . The extent of the disturbance depends on $\Psi$ and the specular reflection coefficient ( $\rho_{g}$ ). where $n i g h$ values of $p_{g}$ lead to a complete failure in estimating $\theta_{t}$. This problem can be better understood by finding the general equation of the phase lag as a function of $\Psi$ and $a_{g}$, where $a_{g}$ as a function of $\rho_{g}$ and the angular positions (through $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$ ) is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{8}=\left[\left|\left(a_{2} G_{2}\right) /\left(a_{1} G_{1}\right)\right|, \quad L \Psi\right. \tag{5-16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The associated phases with $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ above can be given by PLI and PL2 respectively.

$$
\begin{align*}
P L 1=\tan ^{-1}\{ & {\left[\sin \left(z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{8} \sin \left(\Psi+z_{2} / 2\right] /\right.} \\
& {\left[\cos \left(z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{8} \cos \left(\Psi+z_{2} / 2\right]\right\} }  \tag{5-17}\\
P L 2=\tan ^{-1}\{ & {\left[-\sin \left(z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{8} \sin \left(\Psi-z_{2} / 2\right)\right] / } \\
& {\left.\left[\cos \left(z_{1} / 2\right)+a_{8} \cos \left(\Psi-z_{2} / 2\right)\right]\right\} } \tag{5-18}
\end{align*}
$$

where the total phase lag is given by $\triangle P L=P L 1-P L 2$. One concludes that when $\Psi=8^{\circ}$ the values of PLI and PL2 are equal with opposite sign. For a symmetric target-image case and $a_{g}=1$ the values of PLI and PL2 are zero when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and infinity When $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ (PL1 and PL2. are very much noise dependent in these cases). The value of $\Psi$ where the begt angle estimation occurs is a function of the angular spacing between the two sources and $a_{s}$ (for further detall. see [5-20]). A small value of $\rho_{g}$ leads to an improvement in accuracy over all values of $\Psi$ in ceneral and the nonsymmetric targe-image case would effect the target tracking accuracy in positive or negative sense by decreasing or increasing the value of $a_{s}$ respectively. An approximate general equation of the ancular error ( $\Delta \theta_{t}$ ) normalized to the angular spacing between the target and its image as a function of $\Psi$ and $a_{s}$ for a tracking radar is given in skolnik [5-15] as follows:
$\Delta \theta_{f}\left(\div \operatorname{ang} \operatorname{lap}_{\text {apacing }}\right)=\left[\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{g}}^{2}+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{g}} \cos (\Psi)\right] /\left[1+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{B}}^{2}+2 \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{g}} \cos (\Psi)\right]$

However one method to improve the performance is to tilt the beam up (the off-axis monopulse) in order to reduce the reflected signal strength which in turn reduces its damaging effect [5-19]. The best beam tilt value is the one which directa the first null of the subaperture toward the incoming specular multipath signal reducing ita value to zero. But, because we do not know the multipath direction, this method is approximate and it does not always lead to satisfactory results.

Simulation reaults for a low-flying target over a smooth surface are shown in the next section and its performances over different types of rough surfacea are shown and compared with other methods in chap. 6.

## 5-4 Simulation results and discussion

Simulations for the MEM method and the phase-comparison monopulse (in breif. phase monopulse) have been made using the same 21 element linear array described in chapter 3. This linear array $1 s$ divided into three equal aubapertures for the MEM and two equal eubapertures of ten elements each (the element at the middle of the array is neglected) for the phase monopulse. The $S / N$ 1s always taken to be 36 dB calculated for the direct signal only, as recelved by the main beam of the whole armas. The noisy simal for the phase monopulse is generated according to equations (5-12) and (5-13) above, and for the MEM according to equations (4-1). (4-2), and (4.3) in chapter 4.

5-4.1 The MEM resulte

These results are calculated for direct and specular multipath signals at elevation angles of 0.25 BW and -0.25 BW rempectively. A three-point pilter (two poles) is always used and the parameters are calculated according to the Burg method above. Figure $5-3$ shows the power spectrum for $\rho_{8}=0.9$ and different values of $\Psi$. When $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ the two signal components coalesce into one peak (when psi. then


Figure 5-3 :The MEM power spectrum for specular multipath for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{s}=0.9$ and varying phase difference.
theoretically the peak will be shown half-way between the two signals). When $\Psi=180^{\circ}$. two peaks are shown but their positions are highly biased from the real ones. The best solution 1 s when $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ where the nonstationary process becomes stationary [5-5]. and two sharp peakg are shown which locate the angular positions of the two signals with high accuracy. Figure $5-4$ shows the power spectrum for $\rho_{s}=0.42 . \quad$ The only peak when $\Psi=\theta^{\circ}$ 1s blased toward the real position of the direct angle of arrival also a bias toward the real position of the direct angle $1 s$ shown when $\Psi=180^{\circ}$. Figure 5-6 shows the power spectrum for $\rho_{s}=0.1$. where the angular position of the direct aignal is located more accurately than for $\rho_{8}=0.45$ (gee f1g. 5-4) when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$. The specular multipath direction 1 b biased. with wide peake, as a direct result of its low signal power. Thus, smaller values of $\rho_{s}$ eive better accuracy in locating the direct angle of arrival. Further studies show that these resultg are very similar to those for sampling the 21 elements individualiy retaining the the second order filter, degpite the large reduction in procesiing time. The only disadvantage here is the grating lobes which can be avoided in practice. The problems concerning the line splitting, due to phase and noise sensitivity, and the inaccurate indication of the source powers gtill exist here. Figures $5-7$ and $5-8$ show the power spectrum for $\rho_{s}=0.9$ and five different sinapshots to find the effect of the Gausilan noise on the peak positions at $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ for $S W .5$ and $S W .2$ target types respectively. It can be seen that the peaks are sharper and more accurate for the first than the second.


Figure 5-4 :The MEM power spectrum for specular multipath for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{\mathrm{s}}=0.42$ and varying phase difference.


Figure 5-6 :The MEM power spectrum for specular multipath for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{s}=0.1$ and varying phase difference.


Figure 5-7 :The MEM power spectrum for specular multipath for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{s}=0.9$ and 5 different snap-shotse. SW. 5 target's type


Figure 5-8 :The MEM power spectrum for specular multipath for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \rho_{S}=0.9$ and 5 different snap-shotse. SW. 2 target's type.


#### Abstract

From these results one can expect the method to work well over a sough surface where the specular reflection 1s very weak and widely diffused multipath dominates. Interestins simulation results Por performance over various rough surfaces are presented in a coming chapter.


5-4.2 The phase monopulse results

The reaults are computed for a direct signal from a target and $1 t s$ coherent speculap multipath at elevation angles of 6.5 BW and - 0.5 BW regpectively. The rms error ( $\div$ beamwidth) 18 computed Prom $180 \theta$ trials for every value of $\Psi$ shown. The phase difference ( $\Psi$ ) is taken in steps of $10^{\circ}$ degrees between $0^{\circ}$ and $186^{\circ}$ A SW. 5 target type is considered unless otherwise indicated.

Figure $5-9$ shows the rms error in estimating the angie of arrival using phase monopulse as a function of $\Psi$ for $\rho_{8}=0,0.1,0.42$, 0.9. For comparison the performance 18 shown for a SW. 2 target type at $p_{g}=0.0$ only (the solid ilne) Where the increase in the rms error is shown to be very significant over all values of $\Psi$. The error increages as a non-ifnear function of $p_{g}$ where it riges from 0.016 over all Values of $\Psi$ for $p_{g}=\theta$ to a minimum of 0.26 when $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ for $\rho_{s}=0.9 . \quad$ The smaller rms error when $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ for all values of $a_{B}$ tested (except when $a_{g}=6.0$ ) can be related to the digcusion in the previous section and noise effects. Figure 5-10 shows the off-axis performance for $\rho_{\mathrm{B}}=0.9$ and different values of the tilt ansle. In seneral. the rms error decreases as the tilt angle increases. For an ancle tilt of 1.5 BW


Figure 5-9 :RMS error of Phase monopulse as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for angle separation of $1 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and different values of specular multipath.


Figure 5-10 : RMS error of Phase monopulse as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for angle separation of $1 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and different values of beam tilt.
(equivalent to 0.75 of the 3 dB beamwidth of each subaperture) the lowest rms error is about 0.023 at $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ and highest when $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ or $189^{\circ}$ where the rms error rises to about 0.13.

The performance of phase-monopulse over different rough surfaces, where diffuse as well as specular multipath exists, will be studied and compared with related methods in chapter 6.

FPteot
 1 12Mu1t工pmth

## 6-1 Introduction

Much of the past work $[6-1.5]$ on improved radar algorithms for low-flying targets has focused on the case of a single specular reflection from a nominally smooth flat reflecting surface. However in practice, when the reflected signal from a low-flying target propagates over the gurface (sea or land) toward a low sited radar, the field incident on the receiving array is composed of a free space component and a component due to the reflection and diffraction from the surface. The latter consists of a conerent part (specular multipath) and noncoherent part (diffuse multipath) as was shown in chapter 2. Barton [6-9] developed a detailed model which describes the diffused multipath power distribution in the four radar cordinates for a low-flying target and shows that most of the diffuse power from a homogeneous, Gaussian wave-height distributed, surface will reach the receiving array from the region within a gilstening area (see chap. 2).

Cantrell et al. [6-1] have discussed a three subaperture maximum likelihood estimator (3SA-MLE) using a ilnear array to solve the coherent multipath problem for both symmetric
and nonsymmetric cases as was shown in chapter 3. A new three-subapertures trigonometric solution (3SA-TRM) was found and discussed in chapter 4. Also, the performances of the maximum entropy method (using three-subapertures) and the phase monopulse were discussed in the previous chapter for the specular multipath case and are expected to operate well over a rough surface [6-6], [6-7].

In this chapter the performance of the 3SA-MLE. 3SA-TRM, MEM, and the phase monopulse radar are tested and compared in the presence of diffuse and specular reflection environments. The diffused power model was discussed and simulated in chapter 2. The same simulation results for different surface slopes and roughness have been used. In general the results show, that the accuracy depends on three factors: first, the slopes of the surface, where higher slope values means less degredation of the angle estimation accuracy; second, the surface roughness, where the higher the roughness the worst the accuracy; and third, the beamwidth of the array. where the narrower the beam the better the angle estimation accuracy. When the surface is rough the best obtainable accuracy is shown to be from the maximum entropy method and phase monopuise.

6-2 The composite multipath signal model

[^5]\[

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{m}= & a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left[(m-2) z_{1}\right]+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left[(m-2) z_{2}\right]+ \\
& +\sum_{j=1}^{N_{S}} a(j) \operatorname{G}(j) \exp \left[(m-2) \operatorname{z(j)]+n_{m}}\right. \tag{6-1}
\end{align*}
$$
\]

The subscript $m$ takes the values from 1 to 3 for the three subapertures arrangement.

The firgt term in the equation represents, at the $m^{t h}$ element, the direct signal, the second is the specular multipath, the third represents the sum of the diffuse reflection scatterers, and the last one represents the complex Gaussian noise with zero mean and variance $\sigma^{2}$. Also, a(J) is the complex amplitude (drawn from a Gausian distribution) of the $j^{\text {th }}$ diffuse reflection scetterer and $Z(J)$ its associated grazing angle with respect to the horizon. Ns $1 s$ the number of the diffuse scatterers assumed within the glistening surface. $G(J)$ is the subaperture pattern response in the $j^{\text {th }}$ angular direction which is approximated as in equation (3-1) in chapter 3. The remaining symbols are also as described in chapter 3. For the case of the phase monopulse two subaperture arrangement equation (6-1) becomes as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{m}= & a_{1} G_{1} \exp \left[(m-1.5) Z_{1}\right]+a_{2} G_{2} \exp \left[(m-1.5) z_{2}\right]+ \\
& +\sum_{j=1}^{N_{S}} a(j) G(j) \exp [(m-1.5) \operatorname{Z}(j)]+n_{m} \tag{6-2}
\end{align*}
$$

where the subscript m takes the values 1 and 2 only. The descriptions of the terms used are as for equation (6-1). In
the above two equations the phase centre is taken at the midde element of the array. The number of the dipfuse reflection scatterers and their angular positions and powers are computed in chapter 2 for different surfaces (appendix A2. tables 1-7). Figure 6-1 shows a detailed radar target geometry over a plane, rough surface where the dashed lines represent some of the diffused power scatterers.

## 6-3 Simulation results and discussion:

This section presents the results of a computer simulation used to study and compare the performances of the above mentioned methods in different multipath environments. A linear array of 21 elements equally spaced by a half wave-length is used. This array is equally divided into three subapertures of 7 elements (or just two subapertures of 10 elements for the phase monopulse) unless otherwise specipied. The signal to noige ratio used is always $3 \sigma a b$, calculated as in chapter 3. The bisecting angle ( $\theta_{B}$ ) and the angular distance ( $\theta_{D}$ ) are taken to be and 0.25 BW ( BW 1s the 3 dB beamwidth of the whole array), unless otherwise gtated. The noisy signal model used is the one shown in equation (6-1) for all the methods except the phase monopulse where equation ( $6-2$ ) is used insted. The number, and values, of the diffuse scatterers' powers and angular positions are calculated in chapter 2 (Appendix A2, tables 1 to 7) for different surfaces and radar-target seometries and strip lengths. The foreground component of the diffuse power is divided among three scatterers where the power and angular


Figure 6-1 The radar target geometry over a rough surface where the dashed lines represent some of the diffuse reflection scatterers.
position of each is computed for every value of $\beta_{0}$ and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda$ given in table 6-1. The values of the specular reflection coefficient can easily be found for each surface roughness from equation (2-28) in chapter 2. The phase difference between the direct and specularly reflected signals ( $\Psi$ ) is taken in ateps of $22.5^{\circ}$ ( $10^{\circ}$ for the phase monopulse case) from $0^{\circ}$ to $180^{\circ}$. The direct angle of arrival rms errors are averaged over 1000 trials for each value of $\Psi$ and normalized to the 3dB beamwidth.

## 6-3.1 The maximum likelihood method:

Figures 6-2 and 6-3 demonstrate the performances of the symmetric and nonsymmetric 3 SA-MLE respectively over a surface with $\beta_{0}=0.1$ and surface roughness parameter ( $\sigma_{h} / \lambda$ ) of 0.0, 5, 20 . When $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=20$ the direct ancle estimation accuracy is almost the same at all values of $\Psi$. showing large degredation in accuracy for all phases in comparison with the smooth surface $\left(\sigma_{h} / \lambda \sim \varnothing, \rho_{g}=\varnothing .9\right)$. except at $\Psi=\varnothing^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ (Just $180^{\circ}$ for the symmetric case) where improvement occurs. when $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$, the rough surface accuracy degrades at all values of $\Psi$ in comparison with the the smooth one except at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ where a little improvement occurs, for the nonsymmetric case only. 28 can be seen from figure 6-3. Thus, in general, the 3SA-MLE performance degrades as the surface roughness increases. Figures $6-4$ and $6-5$, present the symmetric and nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE perpormances of a medium surpace roughness $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ and three different values of $\beta_{0}$ ( $\theta_{0}=0.05,0.1,0.2$ ). The direct angle estimation accuracy

Table 6-1: The range distribution of the foreground component of the diffused power for a target radar geometry with $h_{r}=5 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{~h}_{\mathrm{t}}=205 \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{R}=10 \mathrm{~km}$ and dipferent surface roughness.

| $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ |  |  |  | $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=2 \theta$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{B}_{0}=0.2$ |  | $\theta_{0}=0.1$ |  | $B_{0}=0.05$ |  | $B_{0}=0.1$ |  |
| Power | Angle | Power | Ancle | Power | Angle | Power | Ancle |
| 0.18 | -0.4 | 0.2 | -0.2 | 0.18 | -0.1 | 0.2 | -0.2 |
| 0.16 | -0.2 | 0. 1 | -0.1 | 0.12 | -0.05 | 0.14 | -6.1 |
| 0.86 | -8. 05 | 0.07 | -0.025 | 0.07 | -0.025 | 0.07 | -0.025 |



Figure 6-2 :RMS error of symmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0$ $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.1$, and $\sigma \mathrm{h} / \lambda=0,5,20$ (when $\theta, \rho_{s}=0.9$ ).


Figure 6-3 :RMS error of nonsymnetric 3 SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0$, $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.1$, and $\sigma \mathrm{h} / \lambda=0.0,5,20$ (when $\sigma h / \lambda=0.0, \rho_{s}=0.9$ ).


Figure 6-4 : R: difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0$ $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5$, and $\beta_{0}=0.2,0.1,0.05$.


Figure $5-5$ : RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{2}=0.0$ $\mathrm{s} / \mathrm{s}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5$, and $\beta_{0}=0.2,0.1,0.05$.
decreases as $B_{0}$ decreases over all values of $\Psi$, except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ where the opposite occurs for the nonsymmetric case and at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ where the accuracy is slightly better for $B_{0}=\sigma .1$ than for $\beta_{0}=0.2$. Figures $6-6$ and 6-7 present the effect of the aperture beamwidth used on the accuracy of the direct angle estimation over a rough surface with $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$. $\beta_{0}=0.05$. Here a linear arras of 42 elements ( $\lambda / 2$ spacing), equally divided into three subaperture, is used in the simulation in order to reduce the $B W$ by half (from 0.084 to 0.042 radians). One can see from the curves, that the narrower the beam the better the performance over all values of $\Psi$ except at $\Psi=188^{\circ}$ for the nonsymmetric case where a little decrease in accuracy is shown. The averace improvement in rms error at $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ is about 0.13 of a beamwidths for the nonsymmetric case and less than 0.1 for the symmetric case-over all values of $\Psi$ which is very substantial. This improvement can be related to two facts: first the 3SA-MLE works better at higher angular separation between the two coherent sources (the angular distance 18 0.5BW insted of 0.25BW for the 21 element array), and the second. and more important, is that the main foreground component of the diffuse reflection is getting closer to the first null of the subaperture beam pattern, greatly reducing its effect.

## 6-3.2 The trigonometric solution method:

Figures 6-8 and 6-9 show the performances of the symmetric and nonsymmetric $3 S A-T R M$ respectively over a surfaces with $B_{0}=0.1$ and surface roughness of $0.0,5$, and 20.


Figure 6-6 :RMS error of symmetric 3 SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0$ $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.05,6 \mathrm{~h} / \lambda=5$, (bearwidth effect comparison).


Figure 6-7 :RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-MLE as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.05$, and $6 \mathrm{~h} / \lambda=5$ (beamwidth effect comparison).

When $\sigma_{n} / \lambda=26$ the anole egtimation accuracy is almost the same at all values of $\Psi$. showing laree derredation in accurecy for all phases in comparison with the smooth surface $\left(\sigma_{h} / \lambda=\sigma_{\mathrm{h}}\right.$, $\left.\rho_{E}=0.9\right)$. When $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$. the rough surface accuracy degrades at all values of $\Psi$ in comparison with the the smooth one. except at $\Psi=186^{\circ}$ where an 1 mprovenent occurs for the symmetric case only, as can be seen from figure 6-8. Thus, the 3SA-TRM performence degrades as the surface roughnegs increases. In seneral $1 t$ performance 18 worst than that of the 3SA-MLE method discuesed in the above subsection especially for $\sigma_{h} \lambda=20$. which can be related to nature of the way each method operates. Figures 6-10 and 6-11. present the symmetric and nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM performances of a medium surface roughness $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ and three different values of go ( $\left.\theta_{0}=6.05,0.1,6.2\right)$. The ancle eatimation accuracy decreagea as Bo decreases over all values of $\Psi$ except at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ and nonsymmetric performance where the accuracy is silshtiy better for $\beta_{0}=0.85$ than for $B_{0}=0.1$ The performance of the symmetric case of this method is much better than that of the 3SA-MLE above for $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ and $B_{0}=0.05$. Figures 6-12 and 6-13 present the effect of the aperture beamwidth used on the accuracy of angle estimation over a rough surface with $\sigma_{n} / \lambda=5 . \quad \beta_{0}=0.05 . \quad$ Heme a linear array of 42 elements. as above, is used in the simulation. One can see from the curves. that the narrower, the beam the better the performance over all values of $\Psi$. The averase improvement in rms error at $\Psi=90^{\circ}$ 1s about 0.18 of a beamwidth for the nonsymmetric case and slightiy leas than 0.1 for the symmetric cese over all


Figure 6-8:RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.1$ and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=0,5,20$.


Figure 6-9:RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{8}=0.1$, and $\sigma h / \lambda=0.0,5,20\left(\right.$ when $\left.\sigma_{h} / \lambda=0, \rho_{5}=0.9\right)$.


Figure 6-10 :RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \operatorname{dr} / \lambda=5$ and $\beta_{0}=0.2,0.1,0.05$


Figure 6-1 $1:$ RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, 6 \mathrm{~h} / 2=5$ and $\beta_{0}=0.2,0.1,0.05$


Figure 6-12:RMS error of symmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{a}=0.05$ $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$, (beamwidth effect comparison).


Figure 6-d 3 :RMS error of nonsymmetric 3SA-TRM as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for $O_{B}=0.0, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \beta_{0}=0.05$, and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$, (beamwidth effect comparison)
values of $\Psi$ which 18 very substantial. This improvement can be related to the same reasons mentioned in the above subsection.

6-3.3 The phase-comparison monopulse

Figure $6-14$ shows the performance of the phase monopulge radar over a roush surface with $B_{0}=0.1$ and $\sigma_{n} / \lambda=6.0,5$, 26. For a surface roughness of 20 (where $\rho_{8}=0.9 \times 10^{-6}$, the obtainable accuracy seeme to be very good over all values of $\Psi$ where the rms error rises to about 0.035 only. This can. be related to the weak specular multipath component and the randomness of the diffuse one. For $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=0.8$ or 5. the lowest min erron 1 s shown to be at $\Psi=130^{\circ}$ and $110^{\circ}$ respectively. This displacement is due to the effect of the diffuse multipath component which behaves like a Gaugsian noise. For a minooth or moderate surface case. the worst performance 18 shown to be at $\Psi=0^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$. The rms erior at $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ worst than that at $\Psi=0.0^{\circ}$ which generally is a consequence of the constructive and destructive interference between the two coherent signals. Figure 6-15 shows the performance over a moderate gurface ( $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ ) for. $B_{0}=0.2,0.1,0.05$. The rms error increases as the surface slope decresses where the best estimate is shown to be around $\Psi=110^{\circ} . \quad$ Figure $6-16$ demonstrates the off-axis performance over a moderate surface roughness $\left(\sigma_{n} / \lambda=5\right)$ for ilt ancle=0.0, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5 BW. The rms error decreases as the tilt angle increages where the effect of the speculap


Figure 6-14 :RMS error of Phase monopulse as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, $\beta_{0}=0.1, \frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=0.0,5,20$ (when $\frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=0, \rho_{s}=0.9$ ).


Figure 6-15 :RMS error of Phase monopulse as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$,

$$
\frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=5, \beta_{0}=0.2,0.1, \dot{0} .05
$$



Figure 6-16 :RMS error of Phase monopulse as a function of phase difference between the two coherent signals for angle separation of $0.5 \mathrm{BW} ; \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, $\frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=5, \beta_{0}=0.1$, and different beam tilts.
multipath component and the foreground component of the
diffuse multipath are reduced (through the antenna
directivity). The chosen value of the tilt angle must be
acompromise; between the need to reduce the effect of the
multipath and the reguired $S / N$ to get a good accuracy. This
depends on the angular spacing between the target andits
imsge where small spacing makes the available accuracy less.

6-3.4 The maximum entropy method:



RMS direct angle-of-arrival error (beamwidths)

Figure 6-17:Histogram shows the performances of the 3SA-MEM and 3SA-ME for $\theta_{B}=0.0, \theta_{D}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \beta_{0}=0.1$, and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=20$ for all values of phase differenc ( $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$ ).
(dashed line), where its accuracy is geen to be much less than that for the 3SA-MEM over all values of $\Psi$. One concludes that the performance of the 3 SA-MEM is much better than that of the 3 SA-MLE over a rough surface when $\rho_{s}$ is very mall. The main reason for this accuracy is that in this case the input signal will be dominated by a strong directiy reflected signal with only very weak coherent multipath plus widely distributed diffuse reflection. These diffuse reflection scatterers will generate poles well inside the unit circle resulting in weak peaks. while the direct signal will generate poles close to the unit circle creating very sharp peaks. Additionally, a histogram of simulation results for a surface with $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ has been obtalned. It shows that the 3SA-MEM works much better than the 3SA-MLE for $\Psi$ close to quadrature and worse when $\Psi$ is far from quadrature. Table 6-2 shows frequency results for this case at different values of $\Psi$ for both methods and figure 6-18 shows its histogram for $\Psi=0^{\circ}$. $90^{\circ}$, $180^{\circ}$ only. Figures $6-19$ and $6-20$ show the power spectrum for the rough surface case $\left(\sigma_{h} / \lambda=20, B_{0}=0.1\right)$ where the first shows three spectra for $\Psi=0.0^{\circ} .90^{\circ} .180^{\circ}$ while the second shows three spectra for $\Psi=180^{\circ}$ and three different sets of noise, where the peak deviation caused by the noise is obvious.

Thus, in seneral, one concludes from the above discussion that the phase monopulse 18 the best for estimating the angle of arrival of a low-flying target over a rough surface. Also, the performance of the maximum entropy over a rough surface is very accurate, but slightly less than

Table 6-2 : Histogram simulation results for the rms angle of arrival error per beamwidths, frequency of occurance out of $100 \theta$ trials for each value of $\Psi$. for medium surface with $\sigma_{h} \lambda=5, B_{0}=0.1$.

| Phase <br> difference <br> (degrees) | Frequency of occurances for the shown rms error bands. |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $0.08-0.05$ |  | 0.05-0.10 |  | 0.10-0.15 |  |
|  | MLE | MEM | MLE | MEM | MLE | MEM |
| 0.0 | 119 | 0.0 | 132 | 40 | 223 | 626 |
| 45.0 | 290 | 32 | 243 | 274 | 142 | 541 |
| 90.0 | 425 | 701 | 249 | 219 | 142 | 39 |
| 135.0 | 280 | 18 | 253 | 149 | 175 | 487 |
| 180.0 | 43 | 0.0 | 64 | 0.0 | 92 | 13 |



Figure 6-18:Histogram shows the performance of the 3SA-MEM and 3SA-MLE for $\theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0.0, \theta_{\mathrm{D}}=0.25 \mathrm{bW}, \mathrm{s} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \beta_{\mathrm{o}}=0.1$, and $\sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5$ at $\psi=0.0^{\circ}, 90^{\circ}, 180^{\circ}$.


Figure 6-19:The MEM power spectrum for a target flying low over a surface wwith $\beta_{0}=0.1, \sigma_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=20, \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{t}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \theta_{\mathrm{r}}=-0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ and different values of phase difference.


Figure 6-20:The MEM power spectrum for a low-flying target over a surface with $\beta_{0}=0.1, \sigma_{h} / \lambda=20, \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{N}-30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{\mathrm{t}}=0.25 \mathrm{BW}, \theta_{\mathrm{r}}=-0.25 \mathrm{BW}$ $\mathcal{\psi}=180^{\circ}$, and three different snapshots.
that of the phase monopulse. A bis degredation in the performance of the $3 S A-M L E$ and $3 S A-T R M$ 1s shown over a rough surface, even so, they offer the best angle estimate over a smooth surface case.

Chapter 7
Conchuetone and Retommendetione fox Fuxthex woxle

The thesis has addressed the tracking problem of ai low-flying target in multipath environment, with emphasis on coherent multipath effects. The multipath phenomenon and its modelling for smooth and rough surfaces are discussed, and simulation results are obtained for surfaces with different roughness parameters. An investigation of the best known closed-form solution so far. the maximum likelinood estimator which uses a linear array divided equaliy into three subapertures ( $3 S A-M L E$ ). is carried out. A new trigonometric solution, using the same three subapertures arrangement above (3SA-TRM), to solve the coherent multipath problem, or equivalently two closely spaced targets, is derived and demonstrated by simulation results. A comparison study between the above two algorithms (3SA-MLE, 3SA-TRM) has been carried out too. The snag with both of them is that the good performance is only obtainable for sources which are close to phase quadrature at the array centre and the performance deteriorates rapidily if the relative source phase approaches $0.0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$. Three
techniques are developed to handie this aituation in both algorithms. They all depend on dividing the array into four equal subapertures and using them in two set of three, one at each end of the array. The reagon for thig in that if the two recelved signals are in-phase or anti-phage at the centre of one of the sets they cannot be so phased at the centre of the other if the sources bearinge are different and one or other of the sets will give an acceptable performance. The techniques are different only in the method each one uses to determine the set which hag the begt chance of solving for the sources. The first technique is based on estimating the phase difference between the two signals at the array centre (chap.3. sec.3-3). The second 1 s . only applicable for the gymmetric target-image case and based on the fact that when the two signals are in phase opposition at the arras centre the overall signal amplitude at the central subaperture 18 very smali in comparison with that of the other subapertures on $1 t s$ sides (especially when the amplitudes of the two received signals are close enough) and vice-versa. The third (explained in detail in chap. 4 ag a part of new algorithm) $1 g$ based on measuring the imaginary part of the sum (or the real part of the difference) of the outputs from the two subepertures on both sides of the array divided by the output from the subaperture in the middie. Also, a new combined three and four subaperture techniques (384SA-TRM). using the same principles of best set determination expiained above. are derived and demonstrated by simulation. Additionally. the performances of the maximum entropy method (MEM) and the


#### Abstract

phase-comparison monopulse radar (1.e. the interferometer radar) are tested for the specular multipath problem by using three and two subaperture arrangements of a linear array respectively. The off-axis performance of the phase-comparison monopulse radar is also tested.

The performances of the above four methods are tested and compared for surfaces with different roughness parameters, i.e. when specular and diffuse reflections components exist together.


## 7-1 Conclusions

As a result of this research, the following conclusions on the tracking problem of a low-flying target can be drawn:

1. The accuracy of the $3 S A-M L E$ and $3 S A-T R M$ are quite comparable when the two received signals are fully coherent (smooth surface case) for both symmetric and nonsymmetric target-image cases.
2. The $3 S A-T R M$ has some advantages over the $3 S A-M L E$ in respect of being easier to implement in a hardware system and being faster in performance, where it only involves finding the arccosine of an angle from a look-up table instead of the quadratic equation solution of the 3SA-MLE.
3. The four subaperture techniques, based on the third method above and introduced in chapter 4 (Sec. 4-2.3), are much
better than the phase estimation based techniques Introduced in chapter 3 (Sec. 3-3), in terms of being both faster $1 n$ processing and cheaper for hardware implementation by allowing the best aperture gub-get to be chosen sight from the start, before the bearing estimation process begins.
4. The amplitude comparison based four-subapertures technique to improve the performance of the symmetric cases of the 3SA-TRM and $3 S A-M L E$ when the two received signals are in phase opposition is very efficient in terms of saving times and implementation costs.
5. The composite three and four subaperture techniques 1.e. 3\&4SA-TRM and 3\&4SA-MLE, introduced in chapter 4 (Sec. 4-2.4) are superior to the ones in step 3 and step 4 above in terms of offering higher accuracy when the two conerent signals are far from being in-phase or anti-phase (Just anti-phase for the symmetric solution). In general, more complicated combining (subgrouping) and sampiing networks are needed.
6. The MEM and the phase-comparison monopulse are very inaccurate when solving the coherent multipath problem unlegs the speculariy reflected signal is very weak in comparison with the direct one, or the two signals are in phase quadrature for the MEM.


#### Abstract

7. The phase-comparison monopulse seems to offer the best elevation angle estimation when the underlying surface is rough (specular reflection coefficient is less than 0.1 ). followed by the maximum entropy method (Burg's method). The performance of the $3 S A-M L E 1 s$ erroneous, while the 3SA-TRM offers the worst performance. For the moderate surface case the available accuracy varies according to the surface roughness parameters, target-radar geometry. and the algorithm in use.


7-2 Recommendations for further work

As with many research problems, new questions always arise during the course of reseach. The following is a list of suggestions for future work which would enhance the understanding of this subject.

1. The effect of mismatch between the subapertures of the array on the performance accuracy of the 3 SA-MLE and 3SA-TRM needs to be investigated. In practice, this problem can occur due to many reasons, such as corrosion, dust, connection faults ...etc.
2. This thesis has only considered the case of estimating the angle on the basis of one snapshot (one pulse). However. multiple pulse intecration can be used to improve $S / N$ in general and to reduce the effect of the diffure multipath problem in particular. The integration time. i.e. the
number of pulses to be integrated, depends on the pulse repetition prequency, and the period of time for which changes in the target parameters can be considered to be negligable.
3. A more detailed understanding of the 3SA-MLE and 3SA-TRM methods will be obtained through a hardware implementation and evaluation of their performances in a real environment.

## APPENDIX

This appendix includes the three papers published during the course of this study.

# 「rigonometric high-resolution method to resolve wo close targets 

. Taha, MSc<br>E. Hudson, PhD, MIEE

dexing terms: Radar and radionavigation, Antennas (arrays)


#### Abstract

Three-subaperture methods for estimating the elevation angles of two targets within the 3 dB beamwidth for the main aperture of a linear array are discussed and applied to the case of a radar target in the presence of multipath over a smooth surface. Simulation results and comparison with the three-subaperture maximumlikelihood estimator by Cantrell et al. are presented. A four-subaperture technique to solve the in-phase and antiphase signal cases is suggested.


## Introduction

he difficulty of tracking a low-flying target over a booth surface (like the sea surface) arises from estimatg the elevation angle in the presence of coherent multith. This problem has attracted the attention of many searchers in the field of radar because of its importance
-6]. The simplest solution so far is given by Cantrell et [2] and Gordon [3], who derived a formula for the aximum-likelihood angle estimator (MLE) which volves the solution of a quartic equation for the nonmmetric case and a quadratic equation for the symetric case (the target and its image located mmetrically about the centre of the aperture pattern in e elevation plane).
In this paper we present a new method which has a nilar performance to the MLE in general and is simpler practical implementation. The emphasis will be on mparing the performance of this method with the aximum-likelihood estimator [2] and showing its vantages. A solution is suggested to solve the in-phase d antiphase signal cases.

## Formulation of three-subaperture method

sume we have a linear array of equally spaced ( $x^{\prime}$ '2) ments and uniform amplitude weights for all elements. dividing this array into three equal subarrays. the n pattern of each subarray (subaperture) can be oroximated by the following equation from Reference
$G\left(\theta-\theta_{p}\right) \simeq(d / \lambda)\{[\sin (\pi d u / i)] /[\pi d u / \lambda]\}$
er 5534F (E15) first received 171 h September 1986 and in revised A 18th May 1987
authors are with the Department of Electronic \& Electrical Enginng, University of Technology, Loughborough, Leics. LE11 3TU, ted Kingdom
where $d$ is the subaperture spacing, $i$ is the wavelength, $u=\sin \theta-\sin \theta_{p}$ and $\theta_{p}$ is the pointing angle.

Now assume that the subapertures signal are $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$ as shown in Fig. 1. The elevation angles of arrival


Fig. 1 Three-subaperture antenna geometry
for the target and its coherent multipath are $\theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$, which can be represented by the bisecting angle $\theta_{B}$ and the angular distance from the bisector $\theta_{D}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \theta_{1}=\theta_{B}+\theta_{D}  \tag{2}\\
& \theta_{2}=\theta_{B}-\theta_{D} \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

From now on $\theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$ will be used instead of $\sin \theta_{1}$ and $\sin \theta_{2}$, respectively, for the small angle assumption. Thus

$$
\begin{align*}
& S_{1}=a_{1} G_{1} e^{j w \theta_{1}}+a_{2} G_{2} e^{j w \theta_{2}}+n_{1}  \tag{4}\\
& S_{2}=a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}+n_{2}  \tag{5}\\
& S_{3}=a_{1} G_{1} e^{-j w \theta_{1}}+a_{2} G_{2} e^{-j w \theta_{2}}+n_{3} \tag{6}
\end{align*}
$$

where $w=2 \pi d / \lambda, G_{1}=G\left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{p}\right), G_{2}=G\left(\theta_{2}-\theta_{p}\right)$, and $a_{1}=A_{1} e^{j \phi_{1}}$ is the complex amplitude of the direct signal; $a_{2}=A_{2} e^{j \phi_{2}}$ is the complex amplitude of the multipath signal; and $n_{1}, n_{2}$ and $n_{3}$ are complex Gaussian noises with zero mean and $\sigma^{2}$ variance for the real and imaginary parts individually.

The noise terms will now be neglected and a solution for $\theta_{B}$ and $\theta_{D}$ found. Taking the sum of eqns. 4 and 6 and dividing the results by eqn. 5 gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}= & 2\left[a_{1} G_{1} \cos \left(w \theta_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \cos \left(w \theta_{2}\right)\right] \\
= & 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right]  \tag{7}\\
& \times\left[\frac{a_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}}{a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}}\right]
\end{align*}
$$

Then, subtracting eqn. 6 from eqn. 4 and dividing by eqn. 5 gives the following:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}= & j 2\left[a_{1} G_{1} \sin \left(w \theta_{1}\right)+a_{2} G_{2} \sin \left(w \theta_{2}\right)\right] / \\
= & {\left[a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}\right] }  \tag{9}\\
& =j 2\left\{\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)+\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right. \\
& \left.\times\left[\frac{a_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}}{a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}}\right]\right\} \tag{10}
\end{align*}
$$

In eqns. 8 and 10 the final bracketed term is identical, and simplifies as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\frac{a_{1} G_{1}-a_{2} G_{2}}{a_{1} G_{1}+a_{2} G_{2}}=\frac{1-\frac{A_{2} G_{2}}{A_{1} G_{1}} e^{j\left(\phi_{2}-\phi_{1}\right)}}{1+\frac{A_{2} G_{2}}{A_{1} G_{1}} e^{j\left(\phi_{2}-\phi_{1}\right)}} \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Letting the phase difference $\phi=\phi_{2}-\phi_{1}$ and $K=$ $A_{2} G_{2} / A_{1} G_{1}$ gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\frac{\left(1-K^{2}\right)-j 2 K \sin \phi}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi} \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we substitute eqn. 12 into eqns. 8 and 10 and find the real and imaginary parts:

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}=2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)-2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right) \\
\times\left[\frac{\left(1-K^{2}\right)-j 2 K \sin \phi}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi}\right] \tag{13}
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)= & 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right) \\
& -2 \sin \left(w \theta_{B} \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right. \\
& \times\left[\frac{1-K^{2}}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=\frac{4 K \sin \phi}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}=j 2\{ \left\{\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right)+\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right)\right. \\
&\left.\times \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\left[\frac{\left(1-K^{2}\right)-j 2 K \sin \phi}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi}\right]\right\}  \tag{16}\\
& \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=\frac{4 K \sin \phi}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi} \\
& \times\left[\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] \tag{17}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)=2 \sin \left(n \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right) \\
& \quad+\frac{2\left(1-K^{2}\right)}{1+K^{2}+2 K \cos \phi}\left[\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right) \sin \left(w \theta_{D}\right)\right] \tag{18}
\end{align*}
$$

Carefully examining eqns. 15 and 17 , it is seen that there is only one difference: in eqn. 15 we have $\sin \left(w \theta_{B}\right)$ instead of $\cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right)$ in eqn. 17. Dividing these two equa-
tions gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{B}=\frac{1}{w} \tan ^{-1}\left[\operatorname{lm}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right) / \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}-S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)\right] \tag{19}
\end{equation*}
$$

From eqn. 19 it can be seen that the calculation of $\theta_{B}$ is independent of the phase difference $\phi$ between the signal and its coherent multipath, except at $\phi=0$ and $\phi=180^{\circ}$ (we obtain the solution $\theta_{B}=\tan ^{-1}(0 / 0)$. which is undetermined).

Inspecting the second term of eqn. 14, it is seen to involve the multiplication of two sines for small angles $\left(\theta_{B}, \theta_{D}\right)$ and the value $\left(1-K^{2}\right)$, which is very small when the reflection coefficient of the surface is large. Therefore. its effect on the equation is very small and eqn. 14 can be approximated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right) \simeq 2 \cos \left(w \cdot \theta_{B}\right) \cos \left(w \theta_{D}\right) \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

By substituting the value of $\theta_{B}$ from eqn. 19 into eqn. 20. the angle $\theta_{D}$ can be calculated and in turn $\theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$, the angles of arrival in the elevation plane for the direct signal and its multipath, respectively:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{D} \simeq \frac{1}{w} \cos ^{-1}\left[\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right) / 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right)\right] \tag{21}
\end{equation*}
$$

When noise is present the solutions are perturbed. but if the signals can, as is normally the case, still be represented as the sum of two plane waves, then the preceding solution continues to give the best maximum-likelihood bearing estimates.

We now investigate the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases separately.

### 2.1 Symmetric case solution

In this case the target and its image are symmetrically located about the centre of the elevation antenna and $\theta_{B}$ is known (for broadside beam $\theta_{B}=0$ ). To calculate $\theta_{D}$, substitute the known value of $\theta_{B}$ into eqn. 21. When $\theta_{B}=0$ (the beam is looking horizontally) then $\theta_{1}=\theta_{D}$ and $\theta_{2}=-\theta_{D}$, and from eqn. 21 we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{D}=\frac{1}{w} \cos ^{-1}\left[\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right)\right] \tag{22}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.2 Nonsymmetric case solution.

In this case $\theta_{B}$ is not known a priori as in the symmetric case, and has to be estimated from eqn. 19. One can see that $\theta_{B}$ does not depend on the reflection coefficient of the surface except when $|\rho|=0$, where the undetermined solution of $(0 / 0)$ occurs. Also, $\theta_{B}$ does not theoretically depend on the phase difference between the two signals (no noise being added to the signals) except when the phase difference is either $0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$, when the undetermined solution of ( $0 / 0$ ) occurs again. In addition, the calculation of $\theta_{D}$ from eqn. 21 shows that $\theta_{D}$ depends on $\theta_{B}$. and by looking at the second term of eqn. 14 one finds that $\theta_{D}$ depends on the reflection coefficient of the surface $|\rho|$ through $K$, and the estimate of $\theta_{D}$ becomes biased when $|\rho|$ becomes very small.

Now, to show the performance of this method in comparison to the results of Cantrell et al. [2]. a simulation of the problem has been carried out according to the conditions in Section 3.

## 3 Simulation

All the simulations have been performed using three subapertures of seven elements each. the interelement
spacing being $\lambda / 2$. Gaussian noise of zero mean and $\sigma^{2}$ variance was added to the signals, and 1000 trials were carried out to find the average errors in the angle estimation. The root-mean-square (RMS) error was calculated as follows:

$$
\text { error } 1=\theta_{1}-\hat{\theta}_{1}
$$

error2 $=\theta_{2}-\hat{\theta}_{2}$
RMS angle of arrival error

$$
=\sqrt{\frac{\sum\left((\text { error } 1)^{2}+(\text { error } 2)^{2}\right)}{2 \times \text { number of trials }}}
$$

where $\hat{\theta}_{1}$ and $\hat{\theta}_{2}$ are the estimated angles of arrival for the direct signal and its coherent multipath, respectively. The error has also been normalised to the 3 dB beamwidth of the array, calculated as follows [7]:

$$
3 \mathrm{~dB} \text { beamwidth } \simeq \frac{102}{N} \text { degrees }
$$

where $N$ is the number of elements in the array (interelement spacing $=i / 2$ ).

The signal/noise (SNR) is defined as follows, from Reference 2:

$$
S N R=10 \log \left[\frac{3\left(G_{1} A_{1}\right)^{2}}{2 \sigma^{2}}\right] \mathrm{dB}
$$

Simulation results for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases are compared with those of Cantrell et al. [2] under the same conditions in Section 3.1.

### 3.1 Symmetric case simulation results

Fig. 2 shows the results for target elevation of $\theta_{D}=0.2$ beamwidths and for phase differences from zero to $180^{\circ}$


Fig. 2 RMS error of symmetric case as a function of phase ditfierence petween signals
$H=0.9 . \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . H_{1}=0.2$ beammidth and $\mathrm{SNR}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$
olid line: new alyorithm: troken line: ©antrell et al. method [?]
n steps of $22.5^{\circ}$. The signal noise ratiọ is $30 \mathrm{~dB},|\rho|=0.9$ Ind $t_{B}=0$. Comparing this curve (solid line) with the one from Reference 2 (broken line) one can see that the berformance is almost the same. with only a slight differnce in accuracy when the phase difference between the wo signals approaches $180^{\circ}$. Fig. 3 shows the low SNR berformance of the method (algorithm) when $\theta_{D}=0.5$ eamwidths, $\theta_{B}=0 .|\rho|=0.9$ and $\mathrm{SNR}=10 \mathrm{~dB}$ were
taken. Comparing this curve (solid line) with the one from Reference 2, we see that when the SNR is small the performance of this algorithm is better. The high signal/


Fig. 3 R.11S error of symmetric case as a function of phase difference between signals
$|\rho|=0.9 . \theta_{B}=0 . t_{b}=0.5$ beamwidths and $S N R=10 \mathrm{~dB}$
Solid line: new algorithm: broken line: Cantrell of al. method [2]
noise ratio performance for both algorithms is essentially the same.

### 3.2 Norisymmetric case simulation results

Fig. 4 shows the results for a target elevation of $\theta_{D}=0.2$ beamwidths and for phase differences from zero to $180^{\text {* }}$


Fig. 4 RMS error of nonsymmerric case as a function of phase difference betwitn signals
$|\rho|=0.9, \theta_{s}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.2$ beamwidihs and $S N R=30 \mathrm{~dB}$
Solid line: new algorithm: hroken line $=$ Cantrell et al. method [2]
in steps of $22.5^{\circ}$. The SNR is $30 \mathrm{~dB}, \theta_{B}=0$ and $|\rho|=0.9$. Comparing this curve with the one from Cantrell et al. (MLE) [2] one can see that the performance is essentially the same except when the phase is close to $0^{\prime \prime}$, where the MLE works better, or close to $180^{\circ}$, where this algorithm (method) works better. Fig. 5 shows the performance of


Fig. 5 RMS error of nonsymmetric case as a function of phase difference beiween signals
$!\rho \mid=0.9 . \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0 . \theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths and $\mathrm{SNR}=10 \mathrm{~dB}$
Solid line: new algorithm; broken line: Cantrell et al. method [2]
this algorithm for a small signal/noise ratio ( 10 dB ) for an elevation angle of $\theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths, $\theta_{B}=0$ and $|\rho|=0.9$ as a function of the phase difference $\phi$. Comparing this curve with the one from Cantrell et al. [2], we see it appears to have a smaller error. The high SNR performance for both algorithms is essentially the same. Fig. 6 shows the performance with small reflection coefficient $|\rho|$ at the surface. The value of the elevation angle of $\theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths, $\theta_{B}=0, S N R=30 \mathrm{~dB}$ and $|\rho|=0.1$ were taken. Comparing this curve with the one from Reference 2 we see that this algorithm has smaller error. Fig. 7 shows the performance with relatively large bisecting angle. An elevation angle of $\theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths. $\mathrm{SNR}=30 \mathrm{~dB},|\rho|=0.9$ and $\theta_{B}=0.35$ beamwidths were taken. Comparing with the (MLE) performance of Reference 2, we see that the MLE fails when $\theta_{B}=0.35$ - beamwidths, where this algorithm still works with very good accuracy. Further studies did show that this algorithm will continue to work until one of the received signals reaches the subaperature beam pattern at a point below the 3 dB point, while the MLE algorithm works with very good accuracy until $\theta_{B}=0.3$ beamwidths of the main aperture.

An imaginary angle (i.e. when $\theta_{1}=\theta_{2}$ ) occurs when the value of $\theta_{D}$ in eqn. 21 is forced to zero, and would arise when the value of

$$
\left[\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{S_{1}+S_{3}}{S_{2}}\right) / 2 \cos \left(w \theta_{B}\right)\right]
$$

is greater than one, basically because of bad estimation of the value of $\theta_{B}$ when $\phi \simeq 0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$. Computer simulations have been carried out using the same data set on this method and the MLE in Reference 2. Table 1 shows
the frequency of occurence of the imaginary angle ( Im (angle)) and $|\rho|>1$ for $\theta_{B}=0, \theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths, $|\rho|=0.9$ and $\operatorname{SNR}=30 \mathrm{~dB} ;|\rho|$ is calculated by replacing the estimated values of $\theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$ in two of the input


Fig. 6 RMS error of nonsymmetric case as a function of phase difference between signals
$|\rho|=0.1, \theta_{B}=0 . \theta_{D} \approx 0.5$ beamwidths and $\mathrm{SNR}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$
Solid line: new algorithm; broken line: Cantrell et al. method [2]


Fig. 7 RMS error of nonsymmetric case as a function of phase difference between signals
$|\rho|=0.9, \theta_{B}=0.35$ beamwidiths. $\theta_{D}=0.5$ beamwidths and $\mathrm{SNR}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$
Solid line: new algorithm; broken line: Cantrell at al. method [2]

Table 1: Frequency of occurrence in 1000 trials for $\theta_{z}=\mathbf{0}$, $\theta_{D}=0.5$ bearmwidths and SNR $=30 \mathrm{~dB}$

| Phase <br> difference, <br> deg | New method |  | Cantrell et al., MLE [2] |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Im (angle) | $\|\rho\|>1$ | im (angle) | $\|\rho\|>1$ |
| 0 | 399 | 123 | 0 | 492 |
| 22.5 | 0 | 255 | 0 | 255 |
| 45 | 0 | 59 | 0 | 59 |
| 67.5 | 0 | 10 | 0 | 10 |
| 90 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 112.5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 135 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 157.5 | 0 | 12 | 0 | 12 |
| 180 | 144 | 16 | 402 | 57 |

equations (eqns. 4 and 5). The significance of showing the number of times $|\rho|>1$ is to indicate the accuracy increase due to the information that $|\rho|<1$, used by Gordon [3] to improve the MLE performance at $\phi=0^{\circ}$.

From Table 1 it can be concluded that an imaginary angle occurs frequently in the new method at $\phi=0^{\circ}$, while for the MLE it does not occur at all. However, its occurence at $\phi=180^{\circ}$ is much smaller than that of the MLE. This would explain the better performance of the new method in comparison with the MLE at $\phi=180^{\circ}$, which is shown in Fig. 4. The imaginary angle never occurs at $\phi=0^{\circ}$ for the MLE, although this does not mean that the estimated angle value is correct. The improved MLE by Gordon [3] actually shows better performance than both methods discussed above. when $\phi=0^{\circ}$.

For the symmetric case, the imaginary angle occurs when the value of $\theta_{D}$ in eqn. 22 is forced to zero, and would arise when the value of $\left[\operatorname{Re}\left(\left(S_{1}+S_{3}\right) / S_{2}\right)\right.$ is greater than one, often due to small SNR at $\phi=180^{\circ}$.

Simulation results on the same set of data show that the imaginary angle occurs 107 times out of 1000 trials at $\phi=180^{\circ}$ for the new method, in comparison with 203 times for the MLE, but never occurs for other $\phi$ values in either method. The number of times that $|\rho|>1$ is the same for both methods: about $3.3 \%$.

## In-phase and antiphase signals

When the signal and its coherent multipath are in phase $\phi=0$ ) or antiphase ( $\phi=180^{\circ}$ ) at the centre of the array, he accuracy in estimating the elevation angle is poor in he asymmetric method, so it is very useful to be able to
decide if the two signals are actually in-phase or antiphase to detect a gross error in estimating the angle. A simple technique can be used from eqn. 17 by looking at the value of the real part of $\left(S_{1}-S_{3}\right) / S_{2}$. This value approaches zero whenever the phase difference $\phi$ is close to zero or $180^{\circ}$ (the same can be seen from eqn. 15). One solution to this problem is to use a four-subaperature technique (three adjacent subaperatures at a time) so that, when the phase is zero or $180^{\circ}$ at the centre of the first three subaperature group, it will not be so at the other three. This technique will be discussed in a separate paper.

## 5 Discussion

A simple three-subaperture method to solve a coherent multipath resolution problem is presented. Its accuracy is comparable to that of Cantrell et al. [2], who applied the maximum-likelihood angle estimator (MLE) to the same three subapertures. The method has comparable performance and appears to show some advantages over the MLE [2] in respect of being easier to implement in a hardware system and being faster in performance, where it involves finding the (cosine) ${ }^{-1}$ of an angle from a look-up table instead of the quadratic equation solution in Reference 2.

A four-subaperture technique is suggested to solve the in-phase and antiphase signal cases.

## 6 References

1 SHARMAN, S.M.: Complex indicated angles applied to unresolved radar targets and multipath', JEEE Trans., 1971, AES-7, pp. 160-170
2 CANTRELL, B.H., GORDON. W.B., and TRUNK. G.V.: 'Maximum likelihood elevation angle estimates of radar targets using subapertures', ihid., 1981, AES-17, pp. 213-221
3 GORDON, W.B.: 'Improved three subapertures method for elevation angle estimation'. ibid., 1983. AES-19, pp. 114-122
4 HAYKIN. S.. and KESLER, J.: Adaptive canceller for elevation angle estimation in the presence of multipath:. IEE Proc. $F$. Commun. Radar \& Signal Process., 1983. 130, (4). pp. 303-308: also in CLARKE, J. (Ed.): Advances in radar techniques` (Peter Peregrinus. IEE Electromagnetic Waves Series no. 20, 1985). pp. 161-166
5 PEEBLES, P.Z.: 'Radar performance with multipath using the complex angle, IEEE Trans., 1971, AES-7, pp. 171-178
6 WHITE. W.D.: Low angle radar tracking in the presence of multipath', ibid., 1974, AES-10, pp. 815-852
7 SKOLNIK, M.: 'Introduction to radar systems' (McGraw-Hill. 1980. 2nd edn.), Chap. 8

Radar-87 Int. Conference<br>London 19-cl 0ct. 198\%<br>EFFECT OF SURFACE ROUGHNESS ON HIGH RESOLUTION ELEVATION ANGLE ESTIMATE IN MULTIPATH<br>A. Taha and J.E. Hudson

Dept. Electronic and Electrical Eng. University of Loughborough, U.K.

Much of the past work on improved radar algorithms for low flying targers has focused on the case of a simple specular multipath reflection from a nominally smooth, flat surface. However, in practice, diffuse multipath reflection as well as specular reflection exist and one must consider both when estimating the performance of any algorithm. So far, the maximum likelihood estimator by Cantrell et al. (1) is the best known algorithm for solving the coherent multipath problem in radar. However, a new interest in using the autoregressive/maximum entrophy method (AR/MEM) is shown in literature (2).

In this paper, input data from an equally spaced linear array, divided into three equal subapertures, is used to test the performance of the MLE and the AR/MEM over various rough surface environments. The diffuse reflection model by Barton (3) is used in these simulations and it is shown that the performance accuracy of the MLE decreases both as the surface roughness increases and when the surface ms slopes decreases. For a given radartarget geometry, the narrower the beamwidth of the aperture the better is the accuracy. The performance of the AR/MEM is shown to be much more accurate than the MLE over a rough surface for all values of phase difference between the direct signal and its coherent multipath. The performance of the AR/MEM over a medium surface is better than the MLE when the two coherent signals are close to phase quadrature and worse otherwise.

## References

1. Cantreli B.H., Gordon W.B., Trunk G.V., 1981, IEEE Trans., AES-17. PP. 213-221.
2. Evans J.E., 1979, IEEE Trans., AES-15, PP. 891-895
3. Barton D.K., 1974, IEEE Proc., 62, PP.687-704

Effect of surface roughness on high resolution elevation angle estimate in multipath
A. Taha and J.E. Hudson

Dept. Electronic and Electrical Engineering, University of Loughborough, U.K.

## INTRODUCTION

Much of the past work (1)-(5) on improved radar algorithms for low-flying targets has focused on the case of a singie specular reflection from a nominally smooth, flat reflecting surface. However in practice, when the reflected signal from a low-flying target propagates over the surface (sea or land) towards a low sited racar, the field incident of the receiving array is composed of a free space component and a component due to the reflection and diffraction from the surface. The latter consists of a coherent part (specular multipath) and noncoherent part (diffuse multipath). Barton (6), (7) developed a detailed model which describes the diffused multipath power distribution ir the four radax cordinates for a lowflying target ar.d it shows that most of the diffuse power from the horogeneous, Gaussian wave-height distributed surface, will reach the receiving array from the region within a glistening area. This diffused power iistribution is a complicated function of the wave lengrin (i), elevation angle ( $\theta_{f}$ ), rms surface height ( $z_{n}$ ), rms surface slope ( $\beta \phi$ ) and the radar target geomêtry. Also, the value of $\beta$ is a complicated furction of the wind speed and direction etc.

Cantrell et al. (1) have discussed a three subaperture maximum likelincod estimator (MLE) using a linear array to solve the coherent multipath problem for both symetric (wher the direction of the direct and the specular-multigati signals are symmetrically located about the centre of the array elevation pattern) and nonsymetric eases. Gordon (2) improved the performance of this algoritht when the two coherent signals are in phase azreement by introducing new constraint related to the zacz chat the absolute value of the specular refieczic: is less than one.

Also, there has ieen a controversy in the literature between white (:0) and Evans (9), (11) with regard to the litility of Eie maximum entropy method (MEM) in the rajar miltigath environsent. Evans showed results from field teses $=2$ preve that the method works well, while white distisses the idea of using it in radar and in the presence of specular multipath in particular.

In this paser fine performance of the !ILE and IEM are tested in the zreserce of diffuse and specular reflection environmerss. Barton's (6), (7) diffused power model is calcuiaces for different surface slopes and roughness and wect in sirulation. The results show, that the ascura* of tire MLE depends on three factors: first, the slopes of the surface, where higher slope values means less degreiation of the angle estimation accuracy, second, the surface roughness, where the higher the rouginess the worst the accuracy, and third, the beamwidt: st the array, where the narrower the beam the better the aryle estimation accuracy.

The paper is organized as follows: the next section presents the diffuse power model for a rough surface used in simulations with comments on the effects of some of the factors involved, followed by discussion of the MLE and MEM, and, finally simulation results and conclusions.

Diffuse Reflection Model For Low-flying Target Over Rough Surface

Various experimental and theoretical investigations of rough surfaces have proved that the scattered field can be represented by the sum of two corponents, a specular component and a diffuse component. The characteristics of the specular reflection component are the same as that from a smooth surface with two restrictions: first, the amplitude of the reflection coefficient is smaller than that for a smooth surface, and second, the reflection coefficient fluctuates. The specular scattering coefficient for a rough surface is given (13) by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{S}=\exp \left[-\left(\frac{4 \pi o_{h} \sin \left(\hat{\nu}_{t}\right)}{\lambda}\right)^{2}\right] \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, $\sigma_{h}$ is the rms deviation of the surface height. The power from the target which reaches the rough surface and is not reflected specularly or absorbed, will be scattered in other directions. Fart of this power will reach the receiving array of the radar from an extended "glistening surface" region exterding from the neighborhood of the target to the nelghborhood of the radar. This is called the diffuse reflection component and the basic scattering elements are small facets which overlie the main large-scale pattern or swell. The rms slope of the small surface facets is given by $B_{\varnothing}=2 J_{n} / d c$, where $d$ is the correlation distance $\varnothing^{\varnothing}(14)$. ${ }^{2}$ comon pracfice among engineers is to express the rms value of the diffuse scattering coefficient ( $p_{d}$ ) as a simple function of ( $0_{h} \sin \left(\theta_{f}\right) / \lambda$ ) as shown in figure 1 , which was drawn from practical data (13). Barton (7) showed however that figure 1 is not accurate, and the values of? shown are smaller than the real values because the antenna used in collecting the experimental data was very directive and part of the scattering surface was not accounted for.

For low-flying targets, the grazing angle (:) is swall in comparison with rms surface slopes ( cases the theory by Spizzichino (14) preaicted that the diffused power will be concentrated near the ends of the glistening surface and a simple diffuse reflection model has sometimes been used, where the total diffuse power is divided between a Eoregrouna component (just in fyont of the radar antemas) and a horizon component (just in front of and below the target). The values of $p_{d}$ and $p_{s}$ are taken, according to the surface roughness and grazing angle from figure l. For long range targets the horizan component for this simple model may lic behind the horizon range with a curved earth so this simple model cannot accurately represent the difinse seattering. In order to get a more accurate model for lowElying target, and to adapt the glistening surface theory to partialy rough surfaces, Barton ( 6 ) introduced a roughness factor ( $F$, which would account for removal of reflected diffusé power by specular reflection at either grazing angle i, or $\xi_{2}$ as shown in figure 2. In this model, the Earget ${ }^{2}$ is considered to be an active transmitter, with non-directional antenna, illuminating the radar and the surroursing rough surface ( $p_{s}=0$ ). For low-flying consitions assume that $0{ }_{t}<\beta^{3} \ll 1, h_{r}<h_{t} \ll R, r_{1}=x_{1}, r_{2}{ }^{*} x_{2}$. The curve of the ${ }^{t}$ gidstening ${ }^{r}$ surface boundary ${ }^{2} s^{2}$ then given by the following, from (6)
$y=\mp \frac{x_{1} x_{2}}{x_{1}+x_{2}} \quad \frac{h_{r}}{\left(\frac{h_{t}}{x_{1}}+\frac{h_{t}}{x_{2}}\right)} \sqrt{e^{2}-\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{h_{r}}{x_{1}}-\frac{h_{t}}{x_{2}}\right)^{2}}$
and it extends from $x_{a}=h_{r} / 2 \varepsilon_{i}$ to $x_{b}=R-h_{r} / 2 \beta_{\theta}$. The
total diffuse power is cotal diffuse power is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{d}^{2}=\frac{1}{4-z^{2}} \int_{x_{a}}^{x_{b}} \frac{R^{2} y d x}{(R-x)^{2} x^{2}} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $F_{d}^{2}=F_{d 1} \quad F_{d 2}=\left(\left(1-p_{s 1}^{2}\right)\left(1-p_{s 2}^{2}\right)\right)^{L_{1}}$
and $P_{s 1}$ and $P_{s 2}$ are the specular reflection coefficients for ${ }^{2}$ the paths associated with $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ respectively.

When the roughness factor $F_{d}$ is included in equation (3), the new value of $p_{d}$ is ${ }^{d}$ given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{d}^{2}=\frac{R^{2}}{2-z^{2}} \int_{x_{a}}^{x_{b}} \frac{F_{d}^{2} x d x}{(R-x)^{2} x^{2}} \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This roughness factor accounts for the specular power at low-elevation angle and the horizon effect for a round earth. No shadowing or masking correction factor is required.

A simulation has been carried out to calculate the diffused power at a receivirg radar antenna of 5 m height, created by the reflection from a target at 205 m height and 10 km range. The diffused power is calculated for a series of rectangular strips of 500 m extent in $x$ from $x_{0}$ (the specular reflection point) to the end of the glistening surface at $x_{n}$. Figure 3-a shows the range distribution of the discrete diffuse power samples ( $1 p_{\text {di }}^{2}$ ) with $\hat{z}_{0}=0.1$ for a completely rough surface while figure ${ }^{0} 3-b$ shows the effect of the surface zoughness ( $c_{\mathrm{r}} / \lambda=5,20$ ). The elevation angle associated with each diffuse scatterer is calculated from the centre of the strip concerned, relative to the horizon ( $\hat{E}_{\text {t }}=-\arctan (x / h$,$) ). The total fore-$ ground diffuse power component the component from $x_{a}$ to $x_{0}$, which is not shown in figure 3 -a is calculated to be 0.42 divided into three scatterers at angles -0.2, -0.1, -0.04 radians and their associated power is $0.2,0.13$, and 0.08 respectively. This procedure is repeated to calculate the range distribution and the s:rface roughness effect for the above target-radar jeonetry for $=0.2,0.05$ (the curves are not shown teve). In general, by reducing the value of $B{ }^{\prime}$, the gilstening surface becomes narrower and its limits ‥cve Earther from the terminal and vis-versa, leading to bigger values of $p$. The results from these simllation will be used Eo study the performance of the algerithms in relation to different surface conditions ssecifiec by $\Sigma_{\gamma}$ and $\sigma_{h} / \lambda$.

## Oc_maximim Likelihood Estimator

T:e maximum likelihood estimator using all the indiviaual array elements (5) is very costly due to ti:e large number of receivers required and the difficuity in getting a closed-form solution. Therefore we use a simple, closed-form, three subapertures MIE found by Cantrell et al. (1) in which a linear array cf equally spaced elenents (elements spacing is $\lambda / 2$ ) is dividea equally into three subapertures as shown in figure 2. The output of each subaperture in the prosence of specular and diffuse multipath over a rough surface is given by the following

$$
\begin{align*}
S_{n}= & A_{1} \exp \left[(n-2) \mu_{1}\right]+A_{2} \exp \left[(n-2) \mu_{2}\right] \\
& N_{s} \\
& +\sum_{j=1} A(J) \exp [(n-2) ;(J)]+N_{n} \tag{6}
\end{align*}
$$

The first term in the above equation represents the
$n^{\text {th }}$ direct sigrial, the second yepresents the $n$
specular multipath, the third represents the sum of the $n$ diffuse reflection scatterers, and the last one, $N_{n}$, represents the $n{ }^{\text {th }}$ complex Gaussian noise with zero mean and variance $\sigma$. Also $A_{1}=a_{1} G_{1}$, $A_{2}=a_{2} G_{2}, A(J)=a(J) G(J), \mu_{1}=i 2 \pi d \sin \left(J_{t}\right) 7 \lambda$, $\mu_{2}=i 2 \pi d^{2} \sin \left(\theta_{r}\right) / \lambda, \quad \psi(J)=12 \pi d \sin (\theta(J)) / \lambda$, and $\left(G_{1}, G_{2}\right.$, $G(J))$ are the ${ }^{r}$ subaperture pattern responses in the 1,2 and $J$ angular directions which can be approximated by the following:
$G\left(\theta-\theta_{p}\right)=\frac{d}{\lambda} \frac{\sin \pi d\left(\sin \theta-\sin \theta_{p}\right) / \lambda}{\pi d\left(\sin \theta-\sin \theta_{p}\right) / \lambda}$
where $\theta_{p}$ is the pointing direction of the beam. The values $\mathrm{a}_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are the complex amplitudes of the direct and specular multipath signals respectively; $a(J)$ is the complex amplitude of the $J^{\text {th }}$ diffuse reflection scatterer and $\theta(J)$ its associated grazing angle with respect to the horizon; $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is the number of the diffuse scatterers assumed within the glistering surface.

The three-subaperture "IE estimator is obtained by choosing the parametors $A_{1}, A_{2}, \theta_{t}, \theta_{r}$ to minimize the cost function L (1), (2).
$\underset{n=1}{L=\sum_{n}}\left|S_{n}-A_{1} \exp \left[(n-2) \dot{L}_{1}\right]-A_{2} \exp \left[(n-2) \dot{H}_{2}\right]\right|^{2}$
By replacing the sines of $\theta_{t}$ and $\theta_{r}$ by their small value approximations and letting $\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{t}}=\hat{\vartheta}_{\mathrm{B}}+\hat{C}_{D} \quad \vartheta_{\mathrm{r}}=\vartheta_{\mathrm{B}}-\hat{\vartheta}_{\mathrm{D}}$ where, $\hat{0}_{B}$ and $\hat{O}_{D}$ are the bisecting angle and the angular distance from the bisector respectively, then $L$ is given by (1).

where, $u_{B}=i 2-d \partial_{B} / \lambda, u_{D}=i 2 \pi d \partial_{D} / \lambda$. So, minimizing $L$ with respect to ${ }^{B}{ }_{i}$ and ${ }^{D}{ }_{2}$ subject to the constraints $\mu_{B} \nu_{B}^{*}=1$ and $-D^{*}-D^{*}=1$, the values of $j_{B}$ and $i_{D}$ can be related to $\dot{\mu}_{1}$ and $\psi_{2}$, and the angle of arrival car be estimated. Detailed discussion for the symmetric and nonsymmetric cases is presented in (1). This algorithm is the best known one for solving the coherent multipath problem in radar. Here, the performance of tiis algorithm will be tested in the presence of specular and diffuse multipath from different surfaces, and the results will be shown and discussed in the siry-lation section.

## The Maximum Entropy Method

In general, time-series spectral estimation techniques are only applicable when the underlying process is stationary. If it is not, such as in the case of a low-flying target over a smooth surface where the direct and reflected signals are coherent, then the resulting wavenumber spectral estimate will not be meaningful unless the two signals are in phase quadrature (10), (15). Because this is not always the case one can conclude that these sorts of algorithms are inappropriate for solving such problems. However, Evans (9), (11) shows results from a fieli test on the performance of the Autoregressive maximum entropy method (AR/MEM), where it worked very well over an irregular surface, but he did not discuss the scale of irregularities. The filter coefficients were calculated according to the Burg method (8). When the surface is rough, the specular reflection coefficent of the reflected field is a function of $z / \lambda$ as we have seen earlier. For example, when in changes from 5 to 20 , the value of $p$ changes from 0.42 to $9 \times 10^{-6}$ for an elevation angle of 0.021 radians. In such environments, the overall received signal at the array consists mainly from a strong direct field and a relatively very small (depending on $i_{t}$ an $v_{h} / \lambda$ ) coherent multipath plus widely distributed diffuse scatterers within the glistening surface. As long as the diffuse reflection scatterers have different phases and amplitudes, using the subaperture techniques would
reduce theix effect and increase the signal to noise-and-diffuse-power-interference ratio at the output of each subaperture. Hudson (12) shows that if the sources are known to lie close to the broadside of the array, then using subaperture techniques are very efficient numerically but cannot resolve the grating lobes ambiguities if they occur. The AR/MEn for wavennumber spectral estimation can be given by the following equation (8), (16).

$$
\begin{equation*}
P(\theta)=\sigma_{w}^{2} /\left|1-\frac{M}{m} \sum_{m=1}^{M} a_{m} z^{-m}\right|^{2} \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, $Z=\exp (i 2 \pi d \sin (\hat{i}) / \lambda)$, $a^{\text {is }}$ the $m^{\text {th }}$ coefficient of the all-pole filter, $M$ is the number of poles, $\sigma_{w}^{2}$ is the variance of the white noise input, and $d$ is tine subaperture spacir.g (or interelement spacing in the case that individual elemerts are considered). Using the three-subapertures technique mentioned in the previous section, the above equation can be written as follows for two poles-filter case.
$p(0)=\sigma_{w}^{2} / 1-a_{1} \quad z^{-1}-a_{2} \quad z^{-2}$
There are two practical methods for locating the peak position of the spectrum. The first is by calculating the roots of the characteristic equation of the preduction errer filter (the quadratic equation in the denominator of the above equation), then finding the angles of the roots which correspond to each incident plane waves. The other method is to find the wavenumber spectrum and, search for its peaks. In the simblation performed for this study of a low-flying target over a rough surface, the second method was chosen, since it is more likely to be used in a practical system.

## Simulation Results

In this section we present the zesults of a computer simulation used to study the performance of the MLE in different nonsymetric multipath environments, and to compare it with the AR/MEM method over a rough sur* face. For the results presented here, we used a linear array of 21 elements equally spaced by a half wavelength. This array is equally divided into three subapertures of 7 elements, uniess otherwise specified. The signal to noise ratio used is always 300 a , calculated for the direct signal c:iy, as received by the main beam of the whole array. Fi.e bisecting angle ( $0_{B}$ ) and the angular distance ( $\mathcal{O}_{\mathrm{D}}$ ) are taken to be 0 and 0.25 BW (BW is the 3 BB beamwidt:: of the whole array), triess otherwise stated. The meisy signal model used is the one shown in equation 6, where the number, and values, of the diffuse reflection scatterers' power and angular position are calcuiated according to the moctel discussed earlier and for the same radar-target geometry and strip length. The value of the specular reflection coefficient can easily be found for each surface roughness from equation :. The phase difference between the direct and speculariy reflected signals ( $($ ) is taken in steps of $22.5^{\circ}$ from $0^{\circ}$ to $180^{\circ}$. The direct angle of arrival rms errors are averaged over 1000 trials for each value of $:$ and rormalized to the $3 d B$ beamwidth.

Figure 4, demonstrates the perfarmance of the nonsymietric case of the MLE (1) over a surface with ${ }^{2} \varnothing^{x 0.1}$ and surface roughness parameter $\left(\sigma_{h} / \lambda\right)$ of 0,5 , 20 (see figure $3-a, b$ ). When $z_{n}=20$ the direct angle estimation accuracy is almost ti:e same at all values of $\therefore$, showing large degredation in accuracy for all phases in comparison with the smooth surface ( $\sigma_{h} / \lambda \approx 0, P_{s}=0.9$ ), except at $\phi=0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ where improvement occurs. Figure 7 shows a histogram for this case where the direct angle of arrival rms error normalised to the beamwidth is shown to be less than 0.1 for about $50 \%$ of the time. When $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$, the rough surface accuracy degrades at all values of $\phi$ in comparison with the smooth one, except at $\hat{i}=0^{\circ}$ where a little improvement occurs, as can be seen from the curves. Thus, in general, the MLE performance degrades as the surface roughness increases.

Figure 5, presents the nonsymmetric MLE performance of a medium surface roughness $\breve{\sigma}_{h} / \lambda=5$ and three different values of $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{e}}\left(\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{g}}=0.05,0.1,0.2\right)$. The direct angle estimation accuracy decreases as $E_{g}$ decreases over all values of $\downarrow$, except at $\xi=180^{\circ}$ where the opposite occurs and at $\phi=0^{\circ}$, where the accuracy is better for $\beta_{\mathscr{D}}=0.1$ than for $B_{\mathscr{D}}=0.2$. Figure 6 , presents the effect of the aperture beamwicth used on the accuracy of the direct angle estimation over a rough surface with $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5, B_{\ell}=0.05$. Here a linear array of 42 elements ( $\lambda / 2$ spacing), equally divided into three subapertures, is used in the simulation in order to reduce the Bll by half (from 0.084 to 0.042 radians). One can see from the curves, that the narrower the beam the better the performance over all values of $\$$ except at $:=180^{\circ}$ where a little decreas in accuracy is shown. The average improvement in rms error at $\phi=90^{\circ}$ is about 0.13 of a beamwidths which is very substantial. This improvement can be related to two facts: first the MLE works better at higher angular separation between the two conerent sources (the angular distance is $0.5 B$ instead of 0.25 BW for the 21 element array), and the second, and more important, is that the main foreground component of the diffuse reflection is getting cioser to the first null of the subaperture beam patter:, greatly reducing its effect. So to get the best performance, one must use the narrowest possible beam to exclude the effect of the main foreground component of the diffuse reflection. Another way to reduce the effect of this component is by tilting the beam up to create positive nonsymmetry in the target-image geometry.

A histogram is used to demonstrate the performance of the AR/MEM over a rough surface, where the angle of arrival is located by searching for the peaks in the spectrum. The rms error of the direct angle of arrival ( 4 beamsidth) is divided into 20 an:ies of accuracy from $0.0-0.05,0.05-0.1, \ldots .0 .9-0.95,=0.95$. The beam is scanned in steps of $0.01^{\circ}$ to ensure high accuracy in locating the spectral peaks over all values of $\phi$. The filter coefficients are calculated according to Burg's method (8) after modification to cperate on complex data from the three subapertures' outputs. For the smooth surface case, the performance of the AR/MEH as a function of has been well studied in the literature (9),(10),(11) and its advantages and disadvantages pointed out, so these are not going to be repeated here where the main concern is about its ability to perform properly over a rough surface. Figure 7 shows the simulation results for a surface witt $z_{h} / \therefore=20$, and $B_{g}=0.1$ where the $A R / M E M$ (solid line) periarmed perfectiy well over all values of $\hat{\mathrm{s}}$. The rms error $o$ Ethe direct angle estimation in beamwidths is better than 0.05 , for $90 \%$ of the time while $9 \%$ of cases fai: :n the range 0.05-0.1. On the same figure a histogra:. Ese the same set of data is shown for the MLE (dashed line), where its accuracy is seen to be much less than that for the $A R / M E M$ over all values of 8 . One concludes that the performance of the AR/MEM is much better tinan the HLE over rough surface when $p_{s}$ is very small. T:ne main reason for this accuracy is that in such case the input signal will be dominated by a strong jirectly related signal with only very weak cohere:. :wiltipath plus widely distributed diffuse reflection. These diffuse reflection scatterers will generate poles well inside the unit circle resulting in weak peaks, while the direct signal will generate poles zicse to the unit circle creating very sharp peaks.

Additionally, a histogram of simulation yesiles for a surface with $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5$ has been obtained. It shows that the AR/MEM works much better than the ME fer: close to quadrature and worse when $t$ is far from guairature. Table 1 shows a histrogram results for this case at different values of 0 for both $A R / M E M$ and :LE:

Th3iE 1．Histrogram simulation results for the rms angle of arrival error per beamwidths，frequency of occurance out of 1000 trials for each value of $\phi$ ，for medium surface with $\sigma_{h} / \lambda=5, \beta_{0}=0.1$ ．

| Phase <br> difference <br> （degrees） | Frequency of occurances for the shown rms error bands． |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0．00－0．05 |  | 0．05－0．10 |  | $0.10-0.15$ |  |
|  | MLE | AR／MEM | MLE | AR／MLM | MLE | AR／MEM |
| 0.00 | 119 | 0.0 | 132 | 40 | 223 | 626 |
| 45.0 | 290 | 32 | 243 | 274 | 142 | 541 |
| 90.0 | 425 | 701 | 249 | 219 | 142 | 39 |
| 135 | 280 | 18 | 253 | 149 | 175 | 487 |
| 180 | 43 | 0.0 | 64 | 0.0 | 92 | 13 |

## Ce：－ivision

The Ferformance of the MLE and the AR／MEM in a rough s：rEace environment is investigated according to the Eor－flying target diffuse reflection model described $b_{i}$ 3arton（6）．The effect of surface roughness，rms sispes，and the aperture beamwidth is shown in detail． Tine lesson learned from this study is that the angle escimation performance of the MLE，for a given target－ rasar geometry，depends heavily on the surface rough－ ness and rms slopes．In general，the estimation aこturacy decreases as the surface roughness increases， a．：also when the rms slopes decreases with some exceptions for multipath phase $=0^{\circ}$ and $180^{\circ}$ ．It has Evind that the aperture beamwidth has a great effect i．：li－iting the diffuse reflection effects and the narrower the beam the better．The use of the AR／MEM to locate a low－flying target over a rough surface is of grea＝potential and its accuracy is superior to the ：ZE sver the range of all possible phase differences whe：：the surface roughness is high i．e．the value of $D_{s}$ is very small，$p_{s}=0.2$ or less．Also，the AR／TEM gerEcrus much better than the MLE when $\$$ is close to \＃iustature phase over a medium rough surface（i．e． $\bar{z}_{s}=0.42$ ），but works badly when $\$$ moves away from zixasuture toward $0^{\circ}$ or $180^{\circ}$ ．

## Feterences

：こa：．trell B．H．，Gordon W．B．，Trunk G．V．，1981， ZEEE Trans．，AES－17，pp．213－221．

2 Gordon W．B．，1983，IEEE Trans，AES－19，pp．114－122．
₹ Tana A．，Hudson J．E．，1986，IEE Electronics Letter， ご Z pp．1116－1117．
i Gaha A．，Hudson J．E．，＂Trigonometric high resolution method to resolve two close targets，＂ EEE Proc．，part F，1987，to be issued．

5 Sinite N．D．，1974，IEEE Trans，AES－10，pp．835－852
© Earton D．K．，1974，IEEE Proc．，62，pp．687－704
－Barton D．K．，1977，IEE Radar－77 Conf．， 155. ：2．308－312

5 Aidcicison N．，1s 74，Geophysics，39，pp．69－72
9 Evans J．E．，1979，IEEE Trans．，AES－15，Pp．891－895
$\therefore$ ：Taite W．D．，1979，IEEE Trans．，AES－15，pp．895－899
：：Evans J．E．，1979，IEEE Trans．，AES－15，pp．899－903

12 Hudson J．E．，2985，IEE ICAP 85，248，pp．237－240
13 Barton D．K．\＆Ward R．H．，Handbook of radax measurement，Prentice－Hall，Inc．， 1969.

14 Beckmann P．，Spizzichino A．，The scattering of electromagnatic waves from rough surfaces， Pergamon Press， 1963.

15 Kay S．4．，Marpel s．亡．，1981，IEEE proc．，69， pp．1380－1419．

16 Reilly J．P．，1981，＂C：kaster University PhD Thesis．
 ahort－range target．


Fig．3－b；The effect of roughnese factor on scattered power distribution for thort－range target at $B_{\varphi}=0.1$ ． $h_{t}=205, h_{r}=5 m, R=10 \mathrm{~km}$


Figure 1 : Seattering factors vs roughness (after Beckmann and Spizichino).

rig.4: gus error of nonaymetric MLE astimat as a function of phase differences between signals for $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=0,6_{0}=0.25 \mathrm{BH}, \mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{Q}}=0.1,5 / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}$, and $\frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=0.0,5,20$ (when $\frac{\sigma_{h}}{\lambda}=0,\left.\right|^{p}:\{-0.9)$


Figure 2. The radar target geometry over a rough aurface where the dashed dines represent some of the diffuge reflection meaterers.

phase differance between the direct signal and ite toherent multipath (degrees)

Figure 5 RMS error of noneymetric mis estipate as a function
 $\mathrm{S} / \mathrm{N}=30 \mathrm{~dB}, 0_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5$, and $\epsilon_{0}=0.05,0.1,0.2$.

phase difference between the direct signal and its coherent multipath (degrees)

Figure 6: Rus error of nonsymetric MLEestimate as a Euncticn of phase difference between signals for $\mathrm{B}^{-0} 0.05, \mathrm{~S} / \mathrm{N}=30$ a $0_{\mathrm{h}} / \lambda=5, \theta_{\mathrm{B}}=0$, and $\theta_{0}=0.022$ radians (beammath effect comparison).


RMS direct angle-of-arrival exroz (beanwidths)
Figure 7. Histograb show the performances of Ah/rien thetsoct and
 ${ }^{8}$ go 0.1 and surface roughness ohe 20 for all phase differences.

# SYMMETRIC TWO-TARGET MONOPULSE ANGLE ESTIMATOR 


#### Abstract

Indexing term: Radar A simplified system for estimating the bearing difference of two symmetrical targets in a two-target monopulse radar is proposed. The technique requires only the envelope amplitudes of two RF signals to be measured, and the computation is very simple.


Introduction: Cantrell et al. ${ }^{1}$ and Gordon ${ }^{2}$ have discussed a three-subaperture monopulse antenna for estimating the directions of arrival of two coherent targets. In the special case of symmetric angles of arrival, relevant for low-angle rracking over the sea, they give a formula for the maximumlikelihood direction estimator which involves the solution of a quadratic equation. The purpose of this letter is to show that a simpler algebraic solution exists which, although not precisely maximum-likelihood, can be shown by simulation to have similar performance in spite of a much reduced work load and does not require phase-coherent digitisation of the element outputs.

Consider a three-subaperture uniformly spaced antenna with two signals symmetrically placed about broadside in the plane of interest. Neglecting the patterns of the subarrays (which can be included in the signals' amplitudes), the signals received at the three elements in a single data snapshot are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& s_{1}=\alpha_{1} e^{j \theta}+\rho x_{2} e^{-j \theta}+n_{1} \\
& s_{2}=\alpha_{1}+\rho x_{2}+n_{2} \\
& s_{3}=x_{1} e^{-j \theta}+\rho x_{2} e^{j \theta}+n_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\rho$ is the reflection coefficient of the (smooth) sea surface. Suppose that the noises $n_{i}$ are all zero; then these equations are trivially solved thus:

$$
s_{1}+s_{3}=\left(\alpha_{1}+\rho x_{2}\right) 2 \cos \theta
$$

$$
2 \cos \theta=x=\frac{s_{1}+s_{3}}{s_{2}}
$$

In the presence of noise $x$ can become complex-valued, and for simplicity it is proposed to use the modulus taking $0=\cos ^{-1}(|x| 2)$ as an estimator for $\theta$.

Simulation restals: The estimation procedure has been simulated using a 21 -element array divided into three subarrays of seven elements. Two sinusoidal signal target sources of separation 0.2 beamwidths (relating to the whole array) and $\rho=0.9$ were placed symmetrically about broadside and, with a beam SNR of 30 dB corresponding to element SNRs of

1000/21, 1000 samples of the field with random noise statistics were taken. Fig. 1 shows a graph of the RMS error of the estimated bearing of one target normalised by the 3 dB beamwidth for target phase differences in the range 0 to $180^{\circ}$. Errors for one target only are shown since $\theta_{1} \equiv-\theta_{2}$ and errors are always equal.

Discussion: The estimator clearly gives identical results to the Cantrell symmetric system except for possibly one trial at $180^{\circ}$ phase difference, and is therefore quite close to the CramerRao bound. The hardware is simplified since coherent demodulators are not required; envelope amplitude detectors applied to ( $s_{1}+s_{3}$ ) and $s_{2}$ are the only measurements. The computation load amounts to a division and a $\cos ^{-1}$; the latter could be done rapidly by a look-up table. The variable $\theta$ is effectively the phase difference between adjacent subarrays, and the interval 0 to $90^{\circ}$ will span one 3 dB width of the main aperture corresponding to target spacings of two 3 dB widths. The algorithm cannot estimate signal amplitudes except for the sum $\alpha_{1}+\rho \alpha_{2}$ or even allocate the $\rho$ coefficient to a particular target, but this is not of great importance in tracking applications.

## A. TAHA

14ih July 1986

## J. E. HUDSON

Department of Electronic \& Electrical Engineering
University of Loughborough
Loughborough, Leics. LE1] 3TU, United Kingdom

## References

1 CANTRELL, B. H., GORDON, W. B., and TRUNK, G. V.: 'Maximum likelihood elevation angle estimates of radar targets using subapertures', IEEE Trans., 1981, AES-17, pp. 213-221
2 GORDON, w. B.: 'Improved three subaperture method for elevation angle estimation', ibid., 1983, AES-19, pp. 114-122


Fig. 1 RMS hearing crror of each target normalised by $3 d B$ htamwidth against relative target phases

Solid line $=$ new algorithm; broken line $=$ Cantrell method

## 

1-1 Rhodes D.R.. "Introduction to monopulse". Artech House Inc. . 1958.

1-2 Skolnik M.I. "Introduction to radar systems". McGrawH111 book company, second edition, 1980.

Schleher D.C.."Introduction to electronic warfare". Artech House. Inc.. 1986.

1-4 Dax P.R. "Keep track of that low plying attack". Microwaves, Vol-15, apri1 1976.

1-5 Becker J.E. and Surean J.C. "Control of radar site environment by use of fences", IEEE Trans.. AP-14. pp.768-773. 1964.

1-6 Guili D. "Polarization diversity in radars". IEEE Proc., Vol-74, pp.245-269, 1986.

1-7 Obe R.W. "The probability of detecting and tracking radar in clutter at low grazing angle", PhD. thesis. Loughborough University, U.K., 1982.

1-8 Sherman S.M. "The use of complex indicated angles in monopulse radar to locate unresolved targets", Proc. Natl. Electron conf.: Vol-22.pp.243-248. 1966.

1-9 Sherman S.M. " "Complex indicated angles applied to unresolved radar targets and multipath", IEEE Trans.. AES-7. pp.160-176. 1971.

1-16 Peeples P.Z. and Goldman L. . "Radar performance with multipath using the complex angle", IEEE Trans., AES-7. pp. 171-178. 1971.

1-11 Symonds M.D. and Smith J.M., "Multi-frequency complex angle tracking of low-level targets", Radar Present and Future, IEE Conf. Publication No-105. pp.166-171. oct. 1973.

1-12 White W.D., "Low-angle radar tracking in the pregence of multipath." IEEE Trans.. AES-10. pp.835-852. 1974.

1-13 Nickel U.. "Angular superresolution with phased array radar: a review of algorithms and operational constraints", IEE Proc. Vol-134. pp. 53-59. 1987.

1-14 Kay S.M. Marple S.L.. " Spectrum analysis-A modern perspective", IEEE Proc., Vol-69, pp.1380-1419, 1981.

1-15 Hudson J.E.. "Adaptive array princiolea", Peter Peregrinus, 1982.

1-16 Clark J..editor, "Advances in radar techniques", Peter Peresrinus, 1985.

1-17 Haykin S.,editor. "Array signal processing". Prentice-Hall. Eaglewood Cliffs. N.J.. 1985

1-18 Cnilders D.G., editor, "Modern spectrum analysis". IEE Press. Inc., N.Y., 1978.

1-19 Monzingo R.A., Miller T.W., "Introduction to adaptive arrays", John Wiley \& Sons. Inc. 1980.

1-20 Gabriel W.F., "Adaptive array - An introduction", IEEE Proc.. Vol-64, pp.239-272. 1976.
1-21 Evans E.J.. "Applicability of the angular power distribution to radar systems with coherent or incoherent interference" . IEEE Trans.. AES-15. pp.899-903. 1979

1-23 Mather J.. "Least squars solutions in signal processing using singular value decomposition", RSRE memorandum, No. 3864. 1986.

1-24 Gabriel W.F.. "A high-resolution target-tracking concept using spectral estimation techniques", NRL Report-8797. Mas 1984.

1-25 Evans E.J.. "Aperture sampling technigues for precision direction finding", IEEE Trans., AES-15, PP.891-895. 1979.

1-26 White W.D.. "Angular spectra in radar applications". IEEE Trans., AES-15. DP. 895-899. 1979.

1-27 Schmidt R.O. "Multiple emitter location and gignal parametr estimation". IEEE Trans., AP-34. pp.276-280. 1986.

1-28 Gabriel W.F., "Spectral analysis and adaptive array superresolution techniques". IEEE Proc. Vol-68. PP. 654-666. 1980.

1-29 Reilly J.P.. Haykin S., "Maximum-ilkelihood receiver for low-angle tracking radar", IEE Proc., Vol-129. pp. 331-340. 1982.

1-30 Haykin S., "Least squares adaptive antenna for angle of arrival estimation", IEEE Proc., Vol-72. pp.528-530. 1984.

1-31 Cantrell B.H.. Gordon W.B.. Trunk G.V.. "Maximum likelihood elevation angle estimate of radar targets using sub-apertures". IEEE Trans.. AES-17. pp.213-221, 1981.

1-32 Gordon W.B.. "Improved three subaperture method for elevation angle estimation", IEEE Trans., AES-19, pp.114-122. 1983.

| 1-33 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Reilly J.P. "Nonlinear array processing techniques } \\ & \text { with applications to correlated multipath", A thesis, } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | McMaster University, Canada, 1981. |
| 2-1 | Rohan P., "Survellance radar performance prediction". |
|  | Peter Pèregrinus Ltd, 1985. |
| 2-2 | Beckmann P., Spizzichino A.. "The scattering of electroma- |
|  | gnetic waves from rough surfaces". Pergamon press, 1963. |
| 2-3 | Meeks M.L. "Radar propagation at low altitudes", Artech |
|  | House Inc.. 1982. |
| 2-4 | Long M.W. "Rader reflectivity of land and sea", Artech |
|  | House Inc, 1983. |
| 2-5 | Barton K.D., Ward R.H. . "Handbook of radar measurement". |
|  | Prentice-Hall. Inc. 1969. |
| 2-6 | Katz I, "Radar reflectiyity of the ocean for circular polar- |
|  | 1zation", IEEE Trans., AP-11, PP.451-453. 1963. |
| 2-7 | Katzin M., On the mechanism of radar sea clutter", IRE |
|  | Proc.. Vol-45, Jan.. 1956. |
| 2-8 | Katzin M.. "Back scattering from the sea surface", IRE |
|  | Conv. record V.3. Part 1. pp.72-77.1955. |
| 2-9 | Barton K.D.. "Radar multipath theory and experemental |
|  | data", IEEE International Conf., Radar-77, London, Oct.. 1977 |
| 2-10 | Court G.W.G. "Determination of the reflection coefficient |
|  | of the sea, for radar-coverage calculation, by an optical |
|  | analogy method". Am. Inst. Ph., pp. 827-839, 1955. |
| 2-11 | McGarty P.T.."Antenna performance in the presence of |
|  | diffuse multipath". IEEE Trans.. AES-12. pp.42-54. 1976. |
| 2-12 | Beard I.C. \& Katz I.."Phenomenological vector model of |
|  |  |
|  | Propagation, Vol-4. pp.162-167, Apri1.1956. |


| 2-13 | Barton K.D. "Low-angle radar tracking." IEEE Proc.. |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Vol-62. pp. 687-764. 1974 |
| 2-14 | Mrstik V.A. \& Smith G.P.. "Multipath limitations on |
|  | low-angle radar tracking". IEEE Trans. AES-14. 1978. |
| 2-15 | Twersky V. "On the scattering and reflection of electrom- |
|  | agnatic waves by rough surfaces", IRE Trans. Antenna And |
|  | Propasation, Vol.5-7, pp.81-90, 1957. |
| 2-16 | Clarke J., "Advances in radar techniques". Peter Peregrinus |
|  | Ltd. pp. 246-249. 1985. |
| 2-17 | Beard C.I."Coherent and incoherent scattering of |
|  | microwaves from the ocean". IRE Trans. Antenna \& Propagation |
|  | Vol-9. pp.470-483. Sept. 1961. |
| 2-18 | Skolnik M.I.. "Introduction to radar systems". McGraw- |
|  | H111 book compans, second edition, 1980. |
| 3-1 | White W.D. "Low-angle radar tracking in the presence |
|  | Of multipath", IEEE Trans., AES-10. Pp.835-852, 1974. |
| 3-2 | Cantrell B.H., Gordon W. B.. Trunk G.V.."Maximum |
|  | likelinood elevation ancle estimate of radar targets |
|  | using sub-apertures". IEEE Trans. AES-17. pp. 213-221. |
|  | 1981. |
| 3-3 | Gordon W. B. " Improved three subaperture method for |
|  | elevation angle estimation". IEEE Trans.. AES-19. pp. |
|  | 114-122. 1983. |
| 3-4 | Skolnik M.I. "Introduction to radar systema", McGraw- |
|  | H111 book company, second edition, 1980. |
| 3-5 | Hudson J.E.. "Adaptive array principles", Peter |
|  | Peregrinus, Stevenage, U.K. 1981. |
| 3-6 | Trunk G.V.. Cantrell B.H., Gordon W.B.. "Bounds on |
|  | elevation error estimates of a target in multipath". |
|  | IEEE Tranz., AES-15, pp. 883-887, 1983. |


| 3-7 | Trunk G.V., Cantrell B.H., Gordon W. B.. "Probability |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | density of the maximum likelihood elevation estimate of |
|  | radax targets", IEEE Trans.. AES-15. DP. 288-290. 1979. |
| 5-1 | Childers D.G., Ed., "Modern spectrum analysis", IEEE |
|  | Press, 1978. |
| 5-2 | Burg J.P., "Maximum entropy spectral analysis", Proc. of |
|  | the 37-th meeting of the society of exploration |
|  | Geophysicists. 1967. |
| 5-3 | Lacoss R.T. "Data adaptive apectral analysis methods". |
|  | Geophysics, Vol-36, pp.661-675, 1971. |
| 5-4 | Haykin S. Ed.. "Array signal processing". Prentice Hall |
|  | Inc.. 1985. |
| 5-5 | Monzingo R.A.. Miller T.W. "Introduction to adaptive |
|  | arrays". John Wiley \& Sons. 1980. |
| 5-6 | Van de Bos A.. "Alternative interpretation of the |
|  | maximum entropy spectral analysis', IEEE Trans., IT-17. |
|  | PP.493-494. Juxy 1971. |
| 5-7 | Haykin S.. Kesler S.. "The complex form of the maximum |
|  | entropy method for spectral estimation", IEE proc.. |
|  | Vol-64, PP. 822-823, May 1976. |
| 5-8 | Andersen N.. "On the calculation of the filter |
|  | coefficients for the maximum entropy spectral |
|  | ansiysis", Geophysics, Vol.39. pp. 69-72. 1974. |
| 5-9 | Kay S.M., Marple S.L., "Spectrum anslysis-A modern |
|  | perapective", IEEE Proc. Vol.69. PP 1380-1419, 1981 |
| 5-10 | McDonough R.N., "Maximum entropy spatial processing of |
|  | array data". Geophysics, Vol.39. pp.843-851. 1974. |
| 5-11 | Kesler S., Haykin S.."The maximum entropy method |
|  | applied to the spectral analyais of radar clutter". IEEE |
|  | Trans., IT-24. pp. 264゙-272. 1978. |

5-12 White W.D. "Angular spectra in radar applications". IEEE Trans., AES-15. DP. 895-899. 1979.

5-13 Evans J.E.,"Aperture sampling techniques for precision direction Pinding". IEEE Trans. AES-15, pp.891-895, 1979.

5-14 Evans J.E.."Application of angular power distribution to radar systems with coherent or incoherent interference," IEEE Trans., AES-15, DP.899-903. 1979.

5-15 Skolnik M.I., "Introduction to radar systems", MeGrawHill book company, second edition, 1980.

5-16 Rhodes D.R., "Introduction to monopulse." Artech house Inc. 1958.

5-17 Sinsky A.I. and Lew E.A.." Comparative analysis of a phase and amplitude processor for monopulse systems," IEEE Trans., AP-13.pp.519-522, 1983.

5-18 Dax P.R., "Keep track of that low flying attack." Microwaves, April 1976.

5-19 Barton D.K., "Low-angle radar tracking." IEEE Proc.. vol.62, pp. 687-784. 1974.

5-20 Locke A.S.,"Guidance," D. Van Nostrand company. Inc.. princeton. N.J.. 1955.

6-1 Cantrell B.H., Gordon W.B., Trunk G.V.," Maximum likelihood elevation angle estimates of padar targets using subapertures". IEEE Trans., AES-17. pp.213-221. 1981.

6-2 Gordon W. B. ." Improved three subaperture method for elevation angle estimation", IEEE Trans., AES-19. PP.114-122, 1983.

6-3 Taha A., Hudson J.E.. "Symmetric two-target monopulse estimator", IEE Electronic letter, 22, pp.1116-1117, 1986.

6-4 Taha A., Hudson J.E.,"Trigonometric nigh resolution method to resolve two close targets". IEE Proc.. part F. Vol-134, pp. 597-601, Oct. 1987.

6-5 White W.D.."Low-angle radar tracking in the presence of multipath", IEEE Trans., AES-10, pp. 835-852, 1974.

6-6 Evang J.E.,"Applicability of the angular distribution to radar systems with coherent or incoherent interference", IEEE Trans., AES-15.pp.899-903, 1979.

6-7 Sinsky I.A. and Lew A.E.," Comparative analysis of a phase and an amplitude processor for amplitude monopulse systems", IEEE Trans. AP-31, pp.519-522. 1983.

6-8 Taha A.. Hudson J.E.."Effect of surface roughness on high resolution elevation angle estimation in multipath", IEE, radar conference 19-21 october 1987. London U.K.

6-9 Barton K.D.. "Low-angle radar tracking", IEEE Proc.. Vol-62, pp.687-764, 1974.


[^0]:    In theory, there are many solutions for overcoming the multipath problem in a tracking radar but most of them are not practical, like the increase of the operating frequency

[^1]:    The basic contributions of this thesis can be summarised by the following:

[^2]:    Depolarization 18 the change of the reflected wave polarization from that of the incident one. So far, it is implicitly accepted that the reflected wave polarization is identical to that of the incident. Here we discuss in brief the extent to which this assumption is correct.

[^3]:    where $\omega=2 \pi d / \lambda$

[^4]:    Fig. 4-3 : Block diagram represents the combined three and four subapertures processing technique for the symmetric case (amplitude comparison only).

[^5]:    The composite output of the $m^{\text {th }}$ subaperture in the presence of specular and diffuse multipath over a rough surface is given by Taha and Hudson [6-8] by the following general equation:

